Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 930N.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 930N is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53) about unclear or missing information.

Download the latest edition of this guide from SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website.
http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/930n/

Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 930N is referred to as "handset" in this guide.
- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
- Sample screenshots* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.

* Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 930N Vintage Black model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default setting *Superior Quality*.

Getting Started 1
Basic Operations 2
Calling 3
Security 4
Mail 5
Internet 6
Camera 7
TV 8
Music Player & S! Appli 9
Entertainment 10
Tools 11
Data Management 12
Connectivity 13
Customization 14
Appendix 15

Search Guide

●Function & Service Name Search

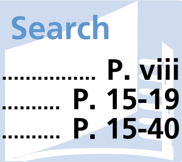
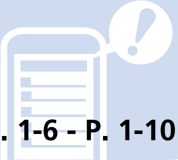


Table of Contents .... P. viii
Menu List .... P. 15-19
Index .... P. 15-40

●Display Indicators

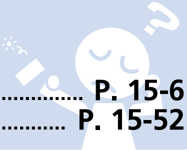


P. 1-6 - P. 1-10

●Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-8

●Solving Problems



Troubleshooting .... P. 15-6
Warranty & After Sales Service .... P. 15-52

●Objective Search

Mastering Basics

My Number & E-mail Address

Customizing Handset

930N Features

SoftBank Mobile Features

Basic Operations

Learn basic menu navigation and key operations.

P. 2-2

Text Entry

Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc.

P. 2-11

Messaging Services

Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail.

P. 5-2

Mobile Internet

Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.

P. 6-2

My Phone Number

Check your phone number on handset.

P. 1-22

My Account Details

Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends.

P. 1-22

Customize E-mail Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address.

P. 14-16

Exchange Information Wirelessly

Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared.

P. 13-2

Download Music

Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player.

P. 9-4

Set Ringtones

Set your favorite songs as ringtones.

P. 14-8

Wallpaper

Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar.

P. 14-3

Add Shortcuts

Add frequently used functions to Desktop Icons.

P. 2-3

Music Player

Download songs and play them on handset.

P. 9-2

Camera & Video Camera

Shoot still images and videos.

P. 7-2

TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV.

P. 8-2

Osaifu-Keitai®

Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card.

P. 11-2

Yahoo! Keitai Sites

A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience.

P. 6-3

Graphic Mail

Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc.

P. 5-4

Gaming Device

Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites.

P. 9-8

S! Quick News

Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly.

P. 10-4

Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.
  Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.
  Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.
- Mobile Widget, S! Appli, S! Mail, S! GPS Navi, PC Site Browser and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the US.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.
- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- The microSD™ logo and microSDHC™ logo are trademarks.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player and Adobe Reader® LE technology under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Copyright© 1995 - 2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.
- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.

  ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.

  ©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

  This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with NetFront Document Viewer by ACCESS CO., LTD. as document viewer function.

  ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD.

  ©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

  ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Bluetooth and the Bluetooth logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. NEC Corporation is granted a license for their use from Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

  Other trademarks and names belong to their respective owners.
- Multitask, Emotion-Expressing Mail, Privacy Angle, Life History Viewer, Quick Info, Desktop info, Quick Album, Word Prediction, Tomo-Den, Tomomato-Mail BOX and FontAvenue are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™

  MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- Hyper Clear Voice is commercially available based on the license for SRS VIP+ technology from SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, VIP+, and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- TruMedia and Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.

  Trumedia, Dialog Clarity, SRS and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

  For more details, visit “GPL・LGPL等について” at http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/

- FrameSolid™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the frame interpolation function.
  FrameSolid™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- PhotoSolid®, MovieSolid®, QuickPanorama™ and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- ImageSurf™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the rapid image display technique.
  ImageSurf™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.
- BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., and INFOCITY, Inc.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Microsoft, PowerPoint, Excel, Windows, Windows Media and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States or other countries of Microsoft Corporation (USA).
- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this guide.
  - ・Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
  - ・Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - ・Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.
  Antibacterial part: Handset body (excluding Display, keys and terminals)
  Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating: JP0122112A0003N
  The SIAA logo indicates the quality control and information disclosure for this product conform to the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles, as a result of evaluations conducted under ISO 22196.
  SIAA
  ISO 22196
  for KOHKIN
- ©ATR-Trek Co., Ltd.
- ©赤塚不二夫／ぴえろ
- ©TOMY
- ©2006 タカラトミー/KL/H
- ©SUGAR
- TM&©2008 Felix the Cat Productions, Inc. All Rights Reserved
- ©DAIKIN.H.T., 2000
- ©T2i Entertainment
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Table of Contents

Before Using This Guide i
Search Guide ii
Intellectual Property Rights.................. iv
Table of Contents.............................. viii
Package Contents................................. x
Safety Precautions xi
General Notes.................................... xix

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts................................ 1-2
Display... 1-6
USIM Card 1-11
Battery & Charger........................ 1-14
Power On/Off 1-18
Mobile Manners 1-20
Codes.. 1-21
Other Basic Information.............. 1-22

2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations 2-2
Multitask....................................... 2-9
Text Entry.................................... 2-11
Phone Book.................................. 2-19
S! Addressbook Back-up............. 2-25
Advanced Features...................... 2-27

3 Calling

Overview.. 3-2
Voice Call....................................... 3-3
Video Call 3-7
Call Logs 3-10
Speed Dialing.............................. 3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)........................ 3-13
Optional Services........................ 3-14
Advanced Features...................... 3-16

4 Security

PIN Settings.................................. 4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use 4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls 4-6
Secret Modes 4-7

5 Mail

Overview.. 5-2
Sending Messages 5-3
Receiving & Opening Messages 5-6
Handling Messages 5-9
Advanced Features...................... 5-15

6 Internet

Overview.. 6-2
Yahoo! Keitai 6-3
PC Site Browser............................. 6-5
Page Operations 6-7
Bookmarks & Saved Pages.......... 6-10
Advanced Features...................... 6-12

7 Camera

Overview.. 7-2
Capturing Still Images 7-6
Recording Videos 7-8
Various Features 7-10
Advanced Features...................... 7-14

8 TV

About TV 8-2
Watching TV.................................. 8-6
Recording/Playing Programs......... 8-9
View/Record Timer 8-11
Advanced Features...................... 8-13

9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player....................... 9-2
Music Playback.............................. 9-5

S! Appli.. 9-8
Advanced Features...................... 9-10

10 Entertainment

Mobile Widget............................ 10-2
S! Quick News............................ 10-4
S! Info Channel 10-5
Books.. 10-7
Advanced Features...................... 10-8

11 Tools

Osaifu-Keitai® 11-2
S! GPS Navi 11-5
Life History Viewer...................... 11-7
Schedule.................................... 11-9
To Do List 11-12
Text Memo................................. 11-14
Voice Memo 11-15
Calculator 11-16
Alarm... 11-17
Pedometer.................................. 11-19
Bar Code Reader 11-21
Text Reader................................ 11-23
Advanced Features..................... 11-26

12 Data Management

About Data Folder 12-2
Accessing Files 12-3
Editing Files................................ 12-9
File & Folder Management......... 12-11
About Memory Card.................. 12-12
Managing Memory Cards 12-13
Advanced Features.................... 12-16

13 Connectivity

Infrared...................................... 13-2
Bluetooth® 13-5
PC Connection............................ 13-9
Advanced Features.................... 13-11

14 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds.............. 14-2
Phone Book & Calls.................... 14-12
Mail... 14-16
Internet...................................... 14-19
TV.. 14-21
Camera 14-23
Player & S! Appli........................ 14-24
Entertainment............................ 14-25
Other Settings............................ 14-27

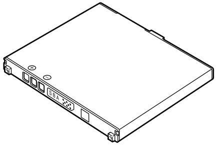
15 Appendix

Multitask Combinations.............. 15-2
Software Update 15-4
Troubleshooting 15-6
Text Entry Key Assignments........ 15-9
Kuten Code List......................... 15-12
Weather Indicators 15-18
Menu List.................................. 15-19
Specifications 15-35
Index 15-40
Warranty & After Sales
Service 15-52
Customer Service 15-53

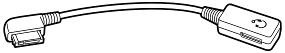
Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.
For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

■ Battery (NEBAL1)



■ Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (NELAH1)



■ Starter Guide

■ Warranty (Handset)

- SoftBank 930N supports microSD™ and microSDHC™ memory cards. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

Labels

- Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

⚠DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury[1] from improper use
⚠WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury[1] from improper use
⚠CAUTION	Risk of injury[2] or damage to property[3] from improper use

[1] Serious injury includes: Loss of eyesight, physical injury, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (blisters or reddening caused by prolonged contact with a heat source higher than body temperature), electric shock, fractures, poisoning and other conditions requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.

[2] Injury includes: Physical burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions not requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.

[3] Damage to property includes: Incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.

Symbols

- Make sure you understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

🚫	Action is prohibited.
🚫	Disassembly is prohibited.
🚫	Exposure to liquids is prohibited.
🚫	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
❗	Action is compulsory.
🔌	Unplug power cord.

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), Desktop Holder (Sold Separately), Memory Card (Not Included), and Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

⚠DANGER

❗	**Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger or Desktop Holder) only.** Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite or malfunction.
⊘	**Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset.** May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modification of handset equipment violates statutory regulations and is subject to penalty.
⊘	**Keep liquids away from handset.** If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.
⊘	**Do not charge, use or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).** May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause Battery to leak, overheat, ignite or rupture. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.
⊘	**Do not use excessive force to attach Battery, AC Charger or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.** Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

⚠WARNING

⊘	**Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on top of an induction heating (IH) cooktop.** May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset, AC Charger or Desktop Holder to overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction.
❗	**Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.** Gases may ignite. Before using a mobile phone with Osaifu-Keitai® inside a gas station, be sure to turn it off. (If IC card lock is activated, first deactivate it and turn power off.)
⊘	**Do not drop or throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.** May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

❗ **If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately:**

1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet.
2. Turn handset power off.
3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury.

Continued use may cause fire or electric shock.

🛇 **Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments or metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from Charger Terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.**

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

🛇 **Do not place handset on an uneven or unstable surface.**

Handset may fall, leading to injuries or handset malfunction. Be particularly careful while charging or when vibrator is activated.

❗ **Keep handset out of reach of infants.**

Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed or may cause injury.

❗ **When a child uses handset, parent supervision is advised. Provide child with proper instructions.**

Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.

🛇 **Do not store handset in humid or dusty places or in places subject to high temperatures.**

May cause malfunction.

❗ **Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.**

Failing to do so may cause injury.

Handling Battery

⚠ DANGER

- **Properly use and dispose of Battery after checking its type as displayed on the label on Battery.**

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

🛇 **Do not throw Battery into a fire.**

May cause Battery to leak, rupture or ignite.

🛇 **Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it or subject it to strong impact.**

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

🛇 **Keep metal objects (pins, etc.) away from Battery Terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments or metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) together with Battery.**

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

❗ **If battery fluid gets into eyes, immediately rinse with clean water. Do not rub eyes and immediately consult a doctor.**

Failing to do so may result in losing your eyesight.

⚠ WARNING

❗ **If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop handset use and rinse with clean water.**

Battery fluid may injure your skin.

❗ **If Battery is not fully charged even after specified charging time, stop charging.**

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

❗ **If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset and keep it away from fire. Be careful not to burn or injure yourself.**

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

❗ **If Battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.**

Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing fire or Battery to rupture.

🚫 **If an abnormality in Battery from external impact (deformed or scratched from dropping) is visible, immediately discontinue use.**

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.

❗ **Do not allow pets to bite Battery.**

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

🚫 **Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.**

Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape.
Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

■ Handling Handset

⚠ WARNING

🚫 **Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.)**

May cause a traffic accident.
Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty.
Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.

❗	**Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.** Handset may cause these devices to malfunction. Devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.
❗	**Keep handset power off aboard an aircraft.** Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation. Handset use aboard an aircraft may be subject to penalty. When in-flight use is permitted, observe airline instructions.
❗	**If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ring volume settings.** These may affect your heart.
❗	**If thunder is heard while outside, immediately turn handset power off and seek shelter.** Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.
⊘	**Do not point infrared beam at a person's eyes.** May cause eye injury.
⊘	**If you use electronic medical equipment, do not place handset in breast pocket or inner coat pocket.** Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.
❗	**Keep handset away from your ear when calling in handsfree mode. When using Earphone-Microphone while playing games or music, adjust volume accordingly.** Sound at high volume may impair hearing; or surrounding sounds may become inaudible over playback volume, resulting in an accident.
⊘	**Do not place handset on the dashboard close to airbags.** In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.
❗	**If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.** Shatter-proof film prevents Display/Camera lens from shattering; however glass fragments and components may cause injury.
⊘	**Do not allow fluids, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or Memory Card Slot.** May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

⚠CAUTION

❗	**If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor.** Handset contains metal material. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.
⊘	**Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.** Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.
⊘	**Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.** Handset may strike you or other people; strap may break causing injury, handset malfunction or breakage.

❗	**Use caution when using handset for an extended period; handset may become hot.** Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.
⊘	**Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing.** May impair your hearing.
❗	**Be careful not to pinch your fingers or Strap when opening and closing handset.** May cause injury or damage.
❗	**Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.** May contribute to impaired eyesight.
❗	**Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones.** Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.
⊘	**If Display breaks, do not inhale or touch liquid crystal fluid.** **If fluid enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If fluid adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water.** May result in loss of eyesight or skin damage.
⊘	**Keep magnetized objects away from handset.** May cause operation errors.

■ Handling USIM Card

⚠ CAUTION

❗	**Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card (IC chip).** May injure your hands or fingers.

■ Handling AC Charger and Desktop Holder

⚠ WARNING

⊘	**Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging.** Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.
⊘	**Use the specified power supply and voltage.** Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction. AC Charger:100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only) Also, do not use commercially available transformer for travel use. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.
🔌	**Unplug AC Charger from outlet before extended periods of handset disuse.** Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.
🔌	**If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug AC Charger from outlet.** Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

❗	**If dust accumulates on AC Charger plug, unplug Charger from outlet and wipe with a dry cloth.** Failing to do so may cause fire.
❗	**When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals, AC Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet.** Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, fire or other dangers.
🛇	**Do not touch AC Charger with wet hands.** May cause electric shock or malfunction.
🛇	**If thunder is heard, do not touch AC Charger.** May cause electric shock.
❗	**Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged.** May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.
🛇	**Do not use AC Charger and Desktop Holder in humid places such as in bathrooms.** May cause electric shock.
🛇	**Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when Charger is plugged into an outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc.** May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.
🛇	**Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger.** May cause electric shock or fire.

⚠CAUTION

🛇	**When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger to strong shock.** May cause injury or malfunction.
🔌	**Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning.** Failing to do so may cause electric shock.
❗	**Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger.** Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.
🛇	**Do not charge a wet battery.** May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.
❗ 🔌	**Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is finished.** Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.

■ Near Electronic Medical Equipment

● The following information conforms to “The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment“ (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), as well as refers to “The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment“ (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

⚠ WARNING

❗	**If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.** Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.
❗	**When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.** Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.
❗	**Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.** ・Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit). ・Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones. ・Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby. ・Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.
❗	**Keep handset power off in crowded places such as rush hour trains; a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.** Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

General Notes

Usage Basics

- Handset use may be disrupted when outside the service area or where signals are weak. Calls may be suddenly cut off when moving to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. inside/next to a tall building, in a tunnel, underground or in mountainous areas).
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from loss or alteration of data (Phone Book, images, sound, etc.) stored on your handset or memory card as a result of accident or malfunction. Back up important data such as Phone Book entries.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far away as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
  <Eavesdropping>
  Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Do not trap Strap or other objects when opening and closing handset. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may, in some rare cases, affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
  - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
  - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
  - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
- When emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are placed, your location is sent to the corresponding agency (police, etc.). Note, your location is calculated by base station signal and not via the GPS positioning feature.
- Do not sit with handset in back pocket of trousers or skirt. Do not place at bottom of bag where handset will be subject to excessive weight. May cause malfunction.
- When using handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery beforehand.
- Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and Battery condition.

- Do not charge Battery:
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Charge in a location with an ambient temperature within the appropriate range (5 to 35 °C).
- When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- FeliCa reader/writer uses the unlicensed 13.56 MHz frequency. Maintain sufficient distance between other reader/writers in use nearby. Make sure mobile phones or other wireless stations operating at the same frequency are not nearby.
- Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.

Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operation in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place.
- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

Handling

- Keep away from liquids and moisture. Handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use these devices in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). When carrying handset near your body (pockets, etc.), moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by moisture, as mentioned above, is not covered by the warranty and may be irreparable.
- Use a dry soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth) to wipe handset. Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. Rubbing Display with a dry cloth may scratch the surface. Clean handset carefully using a dry soft cloth for eyeglasses. If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Occasionally clean Terminals with a dry cotton swab. Soiled Terminals may cause poor contact resulting in power failure and insufficient charging.

- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and Battery. Placing handset in a bag packed with many items or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, Internal Circuit Board or Battery, and cause malfunction. Doing so with external device connected to External Device Port may damage connector, leading to malfunction.
- Although handset becomes warm during use or charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or Keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Do not leave Battery uninstalled or uncharged for an extended period of time; may alter or erase saved settings and data. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store empty Battery. Doing so may degrade performance and shorten life of Battery.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and Memory Card Slot closed. Dust or water inside handset may cause malfunction.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C, and humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.
- Battery is a consumable item. Operating time varies by conditions of use; however when operation time becomes extremely short even after a full charge, purchase a new Battery. Use only specified battery.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C.
- FeliCa reader/writer complies with Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Handset’s IC Card authentication complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Do not insert USIM Card with labels or stickers affixed to it. May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover. Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

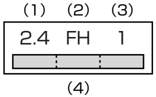
- Do not force connector into External Device Port. Connector may be the wrong way around. Check direction of connector before inserting to avoid damage.
- Do not expose Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to excessive shock or throw it at something.
- Do not place heavy objects on Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- Beware of use while driving a vehicle. Using a mobile phone is subject to penalty. If it is necessary to receive a call, use handsfree mode to inform caller you will call back. Park the vehicle in a safe location to return the call.

Camera

Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

Bluetooth®

- Handset's Bluetooth® function complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- Handset incorporates a security function compliant with Bluetooth® standards for security with Bluetooth® communication. However, security may be insufficient depending on such factors as settings. Care is required for communication using Bluetooth®.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for leak of data or information during communication using Bluetooth®.
- Frequency range



(1) 2.4 : 2400 MHz range
(2) FH : FH-SS modulation
(3) 1 : Maximum interference range of 10 m
(4) : Bluetooth® devices use the 2400 MHz to 2483.5 MHz frequency range and therefore cannot avoid the frequency range used by mobile object identification systems.

- Bluetooth® devices share the same frequency band with; licensed in-house radio stations (in factory production lines), specific unlicensed low power radio stations, licensed amateur radio stations (hereafter, "other radio stations") and scientific, medical or industrial devices (including microwave ovens).

  1 Make sure no other radio stations are operating nearby.

2 If handset interferes with an in-house radio station, immediately change frequency, move to another place or cancel the Bluetooth® function, and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (see below).

3 If interference with a low power radio station or amateur radio station occurs, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (see below).

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center	From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll-free) From landlines, see P. 15-53 for Customer Service.

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.
Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.
The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, TV becomes unavailable.

Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law.
This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark 〶 is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

SAR Certification Information

930N meets the technical standards set by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.
These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.541 W/kg for 930N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC’s permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For more information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)
  http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
  http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html (Japanese)

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: Value obtained from continuously talking with handset placed on the body using earphone-microphone at maximum transmission power.
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Value obtained from talking continuously for six minutes.
- Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the standard handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (Japanese):
http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
  (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

930N has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

930N is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organization through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model.

The maximum SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.501 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.289 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of https://gullfoss2.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm after searching on FCC ID A98-7N2S13A.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website:

http://www.phonefacts.net.

European RF Exposure Information

930N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.
These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 0.890 W/kg for 930N*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.441 W/kg for 930N.
Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much smaller. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.
The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:
http://www.who.int/emf

* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

Declaration of Conformity

CE0168

930N is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.
The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:
http://www.n-keitai.com/

Minding Mobile Manners

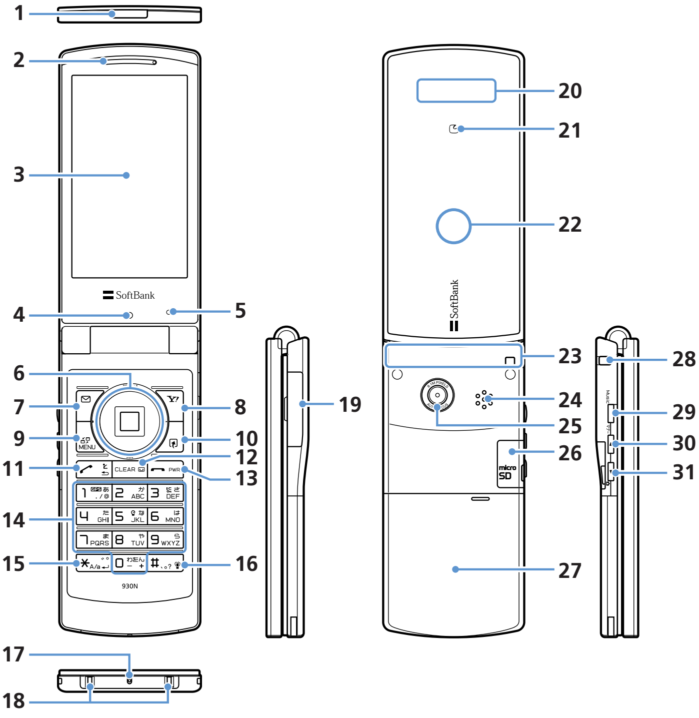
Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Getting Started

Handset Parts **1-2**
Basic Key Operations 1-3
Display **1-6**
Display Indicators 1-6
External Display Indicators 1-8
Switching Display Views 1-9
Mobile Widget (Japanese) 1-9
USIM Card **1-11**
Before Using USIM Card 1-11
Other Notes on USIM Cards 1-11
USIM PINs 1-12
USIM Card Installation 1-13
Battery & Charger **1-14**
Notes on Charging Battery 1-14
Battery Installation 1-14
Charging Battery 1-16
Power On/Off **1-18**
Power On 1-18
Power Off 1-18
Mobile Manners **1-20**
Activating Manner Mode 1-20
Codes **1-21**
Security Code 1-21
Center Access Code 1-21
Network Password 1-21
Other Basic Information **1-22**
Checking Battery Level 1-22
My Phone Number 1-22
Checking Network Status 1-22
Key Illumination 1-22
Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable 1-23
Side Key Guard 1-23
Using ECO Mode 1-23

Handset Parts


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
SoftBank
930N
CLEAR
PWR
MENU
microSD

1	Infrared Port	
2	Earpiece	
3	Display	
4	Front Camera	
5	Light Sensor	
6	Multi Selector	◉ & ✣[2]
7	Mail Key	✉[2]
8	Yahoo! Keitai Key	Y![2]
9	Menu Key	MENU[2]
10	Shortcut Key	⎘[2]
11	Send Key	✆[2]
12	Clear/Back Key	CLEAR[2]
13	Power/End Key	☎[2]
14	Keypad	0 - 9[2]
15	＊Key	＊[2]
16	＃/Manner Key	＃[2]
17	Microphone	
18	Charger Terminals	
19	External Device Port	
20	Indicator Display (External Display)	
21	FeliCa Mark	
22	Charging Indicator/Illumination	
23	Internal Antenna[1]	
24	Speaker	
25	Rear Camera	
26	Memory Card Slot	
27	Battery Cover	
28	Strap Eyelet	

29	Music Key	▯Music[2]
30	Volume up/Manner Key	▲マナー[2]
31	Volume down/Camera Key	▼📷[2]

1 For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not put stickers over Internal Antenna.

2 Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.

Tip

- TV antenna is built into handset (Handset acts as a TV antenna).

Basic Key Operations

In Standby

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6	↑	Access widgets.
	Press and hold ↑	Open S! Quick News List.
	↓	Open Phone Book Search menu.
	←	Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold ←	Open Received Address List.
	→	Open Redial window.
	Press and hold →	Open Sent Address List.
	◉	Access Desktop Icons.
7	✉	Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold ✉	Compose a new message.
8	Y!	Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold Y!	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
9	MENU	Open Main Menu.
10	▣	Activate function assigned to key.
	Press and hold ▣	Assign a function to key.
11	☎	Open Tomo-Den Window.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
12	CLEAR	Play messages on Answering Machine.
	Press and hold CLEAR	Set/cancel Answering Machine.
13	☎	Show/hide Desktop Page.
	Press and hold ☎	Turn power on/off.
14	Press and hold 1	Display current location using GPS function.
	Press and hold 3	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold 5	Set/cancel ECO Mode.
	Press and hold 7	Set font type, thickness and size.
	Press and hold 8	Set Privacy Angle on/off.
	Press and hold 0	Enter "+" (international access code).
16	Press and hold #	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
29	Music	Open Original Menu. Check missed calls (with handset closed).
	Press and hold Music	Activate Music Player.
30	Press and hold マナー	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
31	📷	Check new messages. View Clock when there are no missed calls or new messages (with handset closed).
	Press and hold 📷	Activate Camera in Photo Mode.

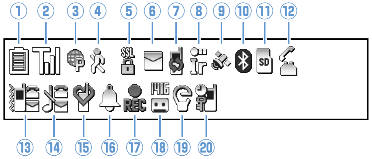
During Voice Calls

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6	▲	Open Phone Book Search Group menu.
	Press and hold ▲	Continuously increase earpiece volume.
	▼	Open Phone Book Search Column menu.
	Press and hold ▼	Continuously decrease earpiece volume.
	◀	Open Received Calls window.
	▶	Open Redial window.
7	✉	Turn handsfree on/off.
8	Y!	Toggle Hyper Clear Voice modes (High, OFF or Low).
9	MENU	Open Task Switch window.
10	⤴	Display function menu.
12	CLEAR	Hold call.
13	☎	End call.
	Press and hold ☎	Turn power off.
16	Press and hold #	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
30	マナー	Increase earpiece volume.
31	📷	Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold 📷	Record other party's voice

During Text Entry

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6	⊚	Insert line feed " ↲ " (when cursor is at the end of text).
	⊚	Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
7	✉	Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold ✉	Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode).
8	Y!	Switch to pictograph/symbol list.
	Press and hold Y!	Access My Pictograms (in S! Mail).
11	✎	Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold ✎	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
12	CLEAR	Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted.
	Press and hold CLEAR	Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text.
15	*	Enter dakuten (゛) or handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Insert line feed " ↲ ."
	Press and hold *	Select area.
16	#	Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold #	Paste copied or cut text.

Display Indicators



① Battery Level
Temperature Warning

② Signal Strength
Out of Range
Emission OFF Mode
USIM Lock Active

③ Yahoo! Keitai Mode
Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress
Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)
Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission
/ Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)

④ Pedometer ON

⑤ SSL Secured Site Connected

⑥ Unread Messages
Handset Message Memory Full
USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread messages)
Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full

⑦ Software Updated
Side Key Guard On
IC Card Lock Active
Side Key Guard & IC Card Lock Settings

⑧ Infrared Transmission
Authenticating IC Card
S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
Dial Lock Active
Original Lock Active
Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode

⑨ GPS Tracking

⑩ (Blue) Bluetooth Communication in Progress
(Black) Bluetooth Power Saving
Bluetooth Call

⑪ Memory Card Inserted
Invalid Memory Card Inserted
Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
Accessing Memory Card

⑫ Voice Call
Video Call
Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
/ / USB Cable Connected in Communication, microSD or MTP Mode
/ microSD/MTP Mode
/ / Handsfree Device Connected in Communication, microSD or MTP Mode
/ / USB Cable & Handsfree Device Connected in Communication, microSD or MTP Mode

⑬ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages
/ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/Messages

⑭ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
/ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/Messages

⑮ Manner Mode
Auto Manner Mode Start On
Auto Manner Mode Release On

⑯ Alarm Set

Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)

⑰ One Seg Timer Recording in Progress

⑱ New Messages at Voice Mail Center

- Answering Machine On
  - New Voice Calls
  - New Video Calls
  - New Voice & Video Calls
- Auto Voice Memo On
  - New Auto Voice Memos
- Answering Machine & Auto Voice Memo On
  - New Voice Calls
  - New Video Calls
  - New Auto Voice Memos
  - New Voice & Video Calls
  - New Voice Calls & Auto Voice Memos
  - New Video Calls & Auto Voice Memos
  - New Voice & Video Calls, Auto Voice Memos

⑲ ECO Mode

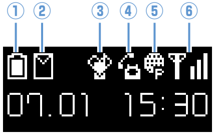
Privacy Angle On (when Backlight is Off)

⑳ Keypad Lock Active (*After Closed* or *Timer* is *ON*)

Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:
  MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Display* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Icons* ⇨ ●

External Display Indicators


①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
07.01 15:30

① Battery Level

② Unread Messages

Handset Message Memory Full

USIM SMS Memory Full

(when there are unread messages)

Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full

③ Manner Mode

④ Voice Call

Video Call

⑤ Yahoo! Keitai Mode

Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress

/ Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)

⑥ Signal Strength

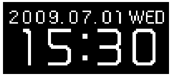
Out of Range

Emission OFF Mode

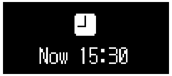
Animation

Handset status and new information appear on External Display.

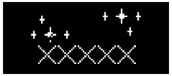
Examples


2009.07.01 WED
15:30

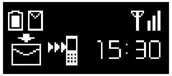
Clock (Digital 1)



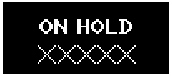
Alarm notification



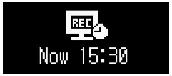
Receiving call



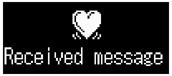
Missed call/
New mail


ON HOLD
XXXXX

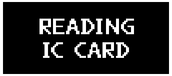
On hold


REC
Now 15:30

Timer recording
notification


Received message

Emotion-Expressing
Mail


READING
IC CARD

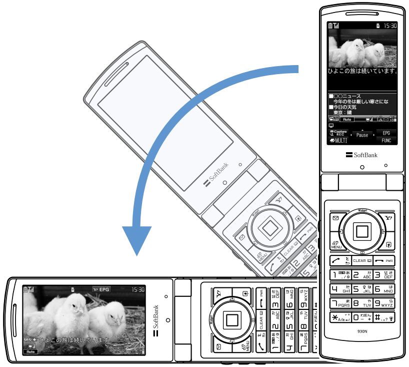
IC card
authentication

Tip

- External Display is sometimes hard to view outdoors or under strong lighting.

Switching Display Views

Display automatically changes to Landscape View when turned on its left side.


SoftBank
930N

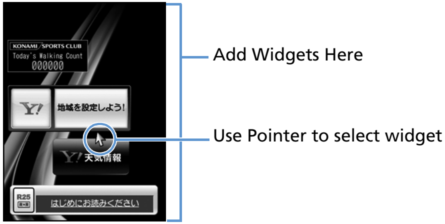
Tip

- Landscape View is available for Camera, TV and file playback (My Picture, Videos or TV). Display remains in Portrait View in ECO Mode.
- Landscape View is also possible by turning handset on its right side while watching TV or playing recorded programs.

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Set Widgets to appear on Desktop.

- For information about Mobile Widget, see P. 10-2.


KONAMI SPORTS CLUB
Today's Walking Count
000000
Y!
地域を設定しよう!
Y! 天気情報
R25
はじめにお読みください
Add Widgets Here
Use Pointer to select widget

Desktop Page

Tip

- Flash® wallpaper pauses when accessing widgets. Open any function before returning to Standby and Flash® resumes.

More Features

Customize

Style Mode Settings

- Set Display Design Collectively
- Check Default Style Mode Settings
- Edit Title of a Style
- Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite
- Change Each Item for Favorites
- Clear All Favorite Settings

(▶P. 14-3)

Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Show Calendar in Standby
- Set Random Display of Images in Standby
- Display Color Scheme
- Set a Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Pattern
- Interface Language
- Set Auto-change Screen
- Guard from Prying Eyes
- Set 3D Effect When Returning to Standby
- Display Quality

(▶P. 14-3)

Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving
- Set Brightness of Backlight

(▶P. 14-5)

Standby Indicators

- Enable Indicator Selector

(▶P. 14-7)

Indicator Display

- Set Only Clock to Appear
- Set Clock Pattern
- Set Messages to Appear
- Set Clock to Appear at Specified Time
- Set Viewable Time

(▶P. 14-7)

Closed Illumination

- Set Flashing Color for Handset Close
- Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close

(▶P. 14-27)

Key Backlight

- Set Key Backlight Color

(▶P. 14-28)

USIM Card

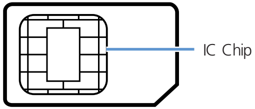
Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When ***PIN1 Code Entry Set*** is set to ***ON***, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

Note

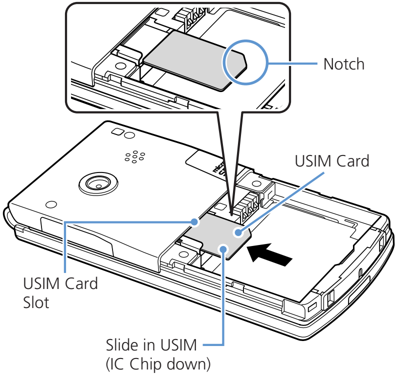
- If PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, USIM Card locks and handset cannot be used.
- If PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, operations that require PIN2 will become unusable.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

USIM Card Installation

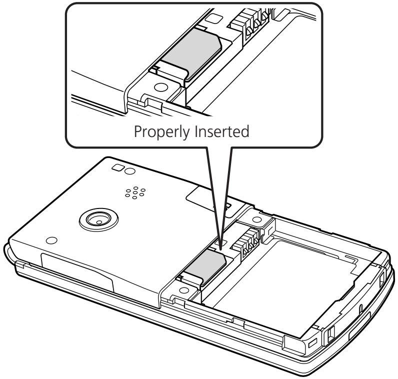
- Remove Battery (P. 1-15) before inserting or removing USIM Card.

Insertion

1 **Slide in USIM Card (IC chip facing down)**


Notch
USIM Card
USIM Card Slot
Slide in USIM (IC Chip down)

2 **Push USIM Card in completely**


Properly Inserted

Removal

1 **Slide USIM Card out gently**

Notes on Charging Battery

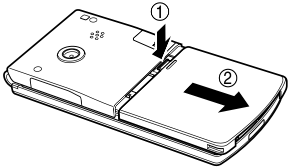
- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-53).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-53).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal. ♻ Li-ion00

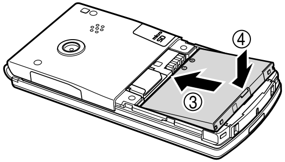
Battery Installation

Insertion

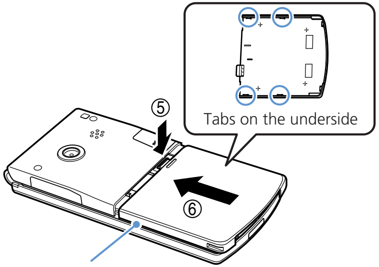
1 **Press and slide battery cover off**



2 **Insert battery into place**



3 Replace cover



Align tabs with handset grooves and slide the cover shut.

Note

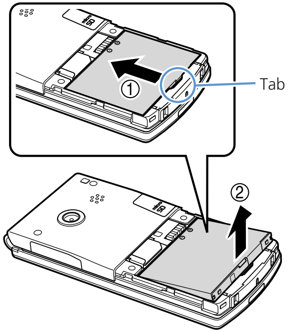
- Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned and cause breakage.

Removal

- ● Turn off handset before removing battery.

1 Remove battery cover

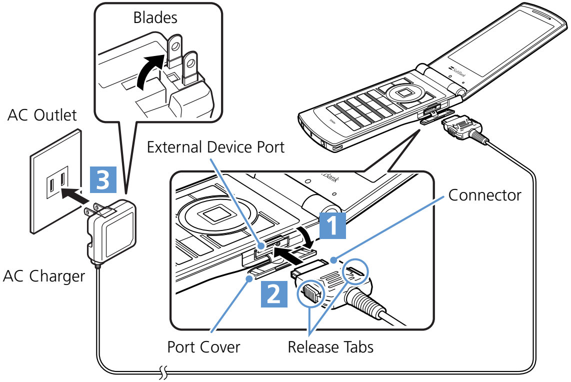
2 Pressing Tab (①), lift out battery (②)



Charging Battery

Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger (ZTDAA1, sold separately).


Blades
AC Outlet
3
External Device Port
Connector
1
AC Charger
2
Port Cover
Release Tabs

1 **Open Port Cover**

2 **Insert Charger connector into External Device Port**

3 **Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet**

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

4 **Disconnect connector from handset**

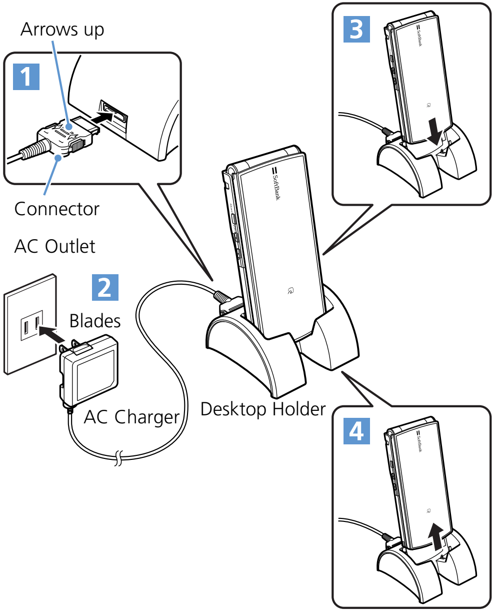
Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.

5 **Unplug Charger from AC Outlet**

6 **Close Port Cover**

Using Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder is sold separately.



1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder

2 Plug Charger into an AC Outlet

3 Place handset in Desktop Holder

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

4 Lift out

Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator 🔋 go out and *Charge Unusual Stop Charge* appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-53).
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator °C flash, handset temperature is unsuitable for charging (Temperature Warning). Wait until handset cools down.

More Features

Customize

Backlight

● Set Backlight during Charging

(▶ P. 14-5)

Sounds

● Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

(▶ P. 14-10)

Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

1 Press and hold ☎

07.01 WED
15:30
Superior Quality

Tip

- Power-on message (WELCOME) may appear on Display for a while when turning on handset immediately after turning power off or inserting battery.
- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

Powering Handset On for the First Time (Initial Setup)

Setup prompt appears in Japanese. Select *NO* and press ◉ to exit.
Change interface language to English (P. 14-5) and restart handset to perform setup as follows.

1 [Initial Settings] window ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Automatically Enter Date & Time**
Auto ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a time zone ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Manually Enter Date & Time**
Manual (Date Time Set) ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a time zone ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter date and time ⇨ ◉

2 Enter Security Code (9999) ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter new Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

3 Select a font size ⇨ ◉

Select ***Separate Setting*** to customize font per window (P. 14-4).

4 [Keypad Sound Setting] window ⇨ *ON* or *OFF* ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears after setup is complete.
- The default Security Code is 9999.

Retrieving Network Information

When ✉, Y! or MENU is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select *YES* to update network settings.

Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings: MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Connection Settings* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Retrieve NW Info* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Power Off

1 Press and hold ☎

Handset shuts down.

More Features

Customize

Clock
- Hide Clock
- Clock Size
- Clock Color
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)
- Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)

(▶ P. 14-2)

Auto Power On/Off
- Set Auto Power On/Off

(▶ P. 14-3)

Display Settings
- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Type
- Set Font Thickness
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

(▶ P. 14-3)

Sounds
- Set Key Sound Off
- Set Handset Open/Close Sound

(▶ P. 14-10)

Key Illumination
- Set Illumination for Power On/Off

(▶ P. 14-28)

Resetting Handset
- Reset All Settings to Default
- Initialize Handset to Default Status

(▶ P. 14-30)

Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

Most handset sounds are muted in Manner Mode.

1 Press and hold #

Note

- When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.
- The other party may hear a short beep if Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.

Tip

- Press and hold # again to cancel Manner Mode.
- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold # to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Set or cancel Manner Mode by pressing and holding ▲ﾏﾅｰ.

More Features

Customize

Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release
- Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

(▶ P. 14-9)

Codes

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.

Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when ***Keypad Sound*** is set to ***OFF***.

Changing Security Code

1. **MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Security* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Change Security Code* ⇨ ◉**
2. **Enter current Security Code ⇨ ◉**
3. **Enter new Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

Battery Level Indicator

Check the battery level at top of Display or on External Display.

▮/▮ 81% to 100% Battery Level
▮/▮ 61% to 80% Battery Level
▮/▮ 41% to 60% Battery Level
▮/▯ 21% to 40% Battery Level
▯/▯ 0% to 20% Battery Level

Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Battery Level*** ⇨ ◉

A large battery level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.
Five beeps:
81% to 100% Battery Level
Four beeps:
61% to 80% Battery Level
Three beeps:
41% to 60% Battery Level
Two beeps:
21% to 40% Battery Level
One beep:
0% to 20% Battery Level

Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

When Battery Is Empty

Recharge Battery appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

1 MENU ⇨ 0

Account Details appear.

■ Add Other Information
⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter information ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

■ View All Information
⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Display All Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ⊙ to switch tabs

■ Reset Account Details
⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Checking Network Status

Check Network Status to confirm if voice calls and/or packet transmission is available.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Network Status*** ⇨ ◉

Network information appears.

Key Illumination

Key backlight flashes in a variety of patterns.

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

Use Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) to connect earphones.
When sound source is monaural (calls, etc.), stereo earphones output monaural sound to left and right earphones; when sound source is stereo, only the left channel is output to monaural earphones.

Side Key Guard

Disable Side Keys (▯Music, ▲マナー and ▼📷) while handset is closed.

1 MENU ⇨ **Press and hold** *

Repeat to cancel setting.

Tip

- Alternatively, set Side Key Guard by: MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Other Settings* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Side Key Guard* ⇨ ● ⇨ *ON* or *OFF* ⇨ ●

Using ECO Mode

When set to ECO Mode, light, sound, and Display settings are modified to decrease battery consumption.

1 **Press and hold** 5

ECO Mode is set, and 🍃 appears.

Note

- ECO Mode is canceled when handset is turned off.
- The other party may hear short beeps if ECO Mode is set or canceled during a call.

Tip

- Press and hold # again to cancel ECO Mode.
- Press and hold 5 to set or cancel ECO Mode during a call.

More Features

Customize

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Power On/Off
- Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls
- Set Illumination for Call Start
- Set Illumination for Sending/Receiving Messages
- Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail
- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification
- Set Illumination for Snooze Notification
- Set Illumination for Ir/IC Transmission
- Set Illumination for Missed Call or New Message
- Set Illumination for When Handset Opens
- Set Illumination for Special Events

(▶ P. 14-28)

Basic Operations

Menu Operations 2-2
- Accessing Handset Functions 2-2
- Icons/Notifications 2-3
- Info 2-6
- Navigating through Menus 2-7

Multitask 2-9
- Activating Another Function 2-9
- Toggling Functions 2-10

Text Entry 2-11
- Overview 2-11
- Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode 2-12
- Editing Text 2-14
- Editing Templates 2-15
- Using Dictionaries 2-15
- Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode 2-16
- Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode 2-16

Phone Book 2-19
- Overview 2-19
- Creating Phone Book Entries 2-20
- Using Phone Book 2-21
- Phone Book Settings 2-22

S! Addressbook Back-up 2-25
- Overview 2-25
- Using S! Addressbook Back-up 2-25

Advanced Features 2-27
- Main Menu 2-27
- Desktop Icons 2-27
- Text Entry 2-27
- Templates 2-29
- Dictionaries 2-29
- Phone Book 2-30
- S! Addressbook Back-up 2-32

2

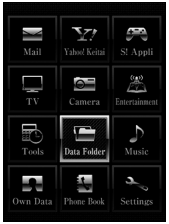
Menu Operations

Accessing Handset Functions

- In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

From Main Menu

Press MENU to open Main Menu. Use ✥ to select an item and press ● to open sub menus.


Mail
Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli
TV
Camera
Entertainment
Tools
Data Folder
Music
Own Data
Phone Book
Settings

Main Menu

Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

Softkeys

- ✉: Open Mail menu.
- Y!(Press and hold): Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- ⤴: Access the function assigned to the key.

Multi Selector

- ▲: Open Active Desktop Page.
- ▼: Open Phone Book Search window.
- ◀: Open Received Calls window.
- ▶: Open Redial window.

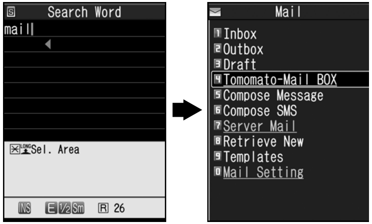
Keyword Search

Enter keywords to search for menu items.

1 MENU ⇨ ⤴

2 **Enter keyword ⇨ ●**

<Example> Enter "mail"


Search Word
mail
Sel. Area
INS
E ½ Sm
R 26
Mail
1 Inbox
2 Outbox
3 Draft
4 Tomomato-Mail BOX
5 Compose Message
6 Compose SMS
7 Server Mail
8 Retrieve New
9 Templates
0 Mail Setting

Corresponding results appear.

3 **Select an item ⇨ ●**

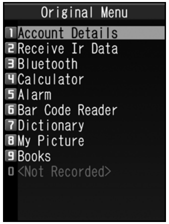
Press Y! to toggle results.

Menu Operations

From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

1 MENU ⇨ Y!


Original Menu
1 Account Details
2 Receive Ir Data
3 Bluetooth
4 Calculator
5 Alarm
6 Bar Code Reader
7 Dictionary
8 My Picture
9 Books
0 <Not Recorded>

Press Y! to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

Enter Menu Item Number

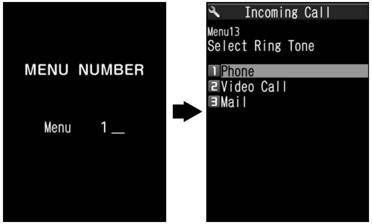
Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to ***Basic***.

- ● See P. 15-19 for menu item numbers.
- ● See P. 2-27 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access *Select Ring Tone* (menu no. 13)

1 MENU

2 1 ⇨ 3

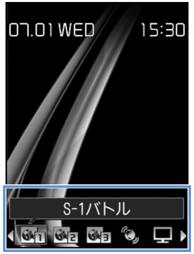

MENU NUMBER
Menu 1_
Incoming Call
Menu13
Select Ring Tone
1 Phone
2 Video Call
3 Mail

Icons/Notifications

Add functions to Icon window and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information.

The following shortcuts are set by default.

- ・S-1バトル (Japanese)
- ・コンテンツ得パック (Japanese)
- ・選べるかんたん動画 (Japanese)
- ・S! Quick News List
- ・Photo Mode
- ・TV
- ・Quick Search


07.01 WED
15:30
S-1バトル

Icons

Icon	Function
	S! Quick News List
	Photo Mode
	TV
	Quick Search
	Call Phone Number
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody

Icon	Function
	Show Image
	Play Video
	S! Appli
	Inbox Folder
	Movie Mode
	Voice Mode
	Schedule
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader

Icon	Function
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	Life History Viewer
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Bluetooth
	Original Menu
	PC Site Browser
	Books

Icon	Function
	Play/Erase Msg.
TV	Play/Erase VC Msg.
	Pedometer
	Illumination

Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
Miss	Missed Calls
Msg	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
TV Msg	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
VM	Voice Mail

Icon	Function/Information
New	New Messages
Miss	Failed Alarms
Alarm	Missed TV Programs
REC Finish	Timer Recording Finished
¥ Max	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
Update	Software Update
Connect	USB Mode Communication
Search	Network Re-search
Update	New S! Info Channel

Icon	Function/Information
Miss	New S! Info Channel Receive Failure
New	New Weather Info.
Miss	Weather Info. Receive Failure
Get	Content Keys Acquired

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information. Answering Machine and Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back.

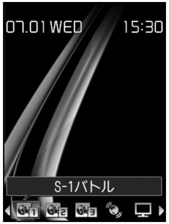
Adding Icons

Add up to 15 icons.

1 **From a function** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ●

Accessing Icons & Notifications

1 ●



Icon Window

2 ✥ ⇨ **Select an icon** ⇨ ●

■ **Scrolling Icons**

⇨ ◎

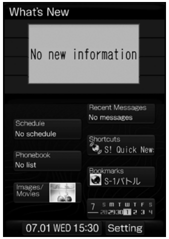
Info

Phone numbers, functions, etc. saved to Icon window appear in Info window.

Accessing Data and Functions

Press Y! to toggle Info window and Icon window.

1 ● ⇨ Y!


What's New
No new information
Recent Messages
No messages
Schedule
No schedule
Shortcuts
S! Quick New
Phonebook
No list
Bookmarks
S-1バトル
Images/Movies
07.01 WED 15:30 Setting

Info Window

Desktop opens to previously used window.

2 ✥ ⇨ **Select an item** ⇨ ●

Items

Item	Details
What's New	Access/view Notifications (P. 2-5).
Recent Messages	Access new messages.
Schedule	**Schedule** Access schedule entries (today/tomorrow).
	To Do List Access To Do List entries.
Shortcuts	Access Icons saved to Icon window.
Phonebook	**Phone Number** Access phone numbers from Icon window.
	E-mail address Select e-mail address (from Icon window) to Create S! Mail.
Bookmarks	**Yahoo! Keitai** Access bookmarked sites.
	PC Site Browser Access bookmarked sites.

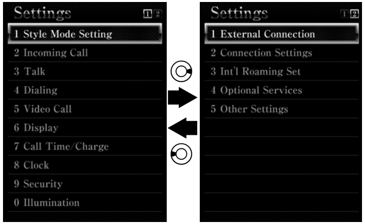
Menu Operations

Item	Details
Images & Movies	**Still images** Open image.
	Video Play video.
Calendar	Open Calendar.
Clock	Access Alarm list (Set Main Time window appears when clock is not set).
Settings	• Set items on/off. • Change item order.

Navigating through Menus

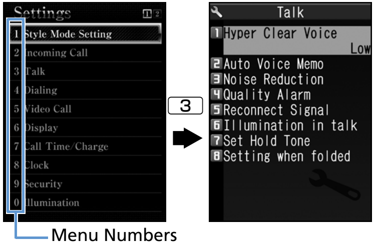
Scrolling Pages

Use ◎ or ◎ (▲マナー or ▼📷) to scroll next/previous pages.


Settings
1 Style Mode Setting
2 Incoming Call
3 Talk
4 Dialing
5 Video Call
6 Display
7 Call Time/Charge
8 Clock
9 Security
0 Illumination
Settings
1 External Connection
2 Connection Settings
3 Int'l Roaming Set
4 Optional Services
5 Other Settings

Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.


Settings
1 Style Mode Setting
2 Incoming Call
3 Talk
4 Dialing
5 Video Call
6 Display
7 Call Time/Charge
8 Clock
9 Security
0 Illumination
3
Talk
1 Hyper Clear Voice
Low
2 Auto Voice Memo
3 Noise Reduction
4 Quality Alarm
5 Reconnect Signal
6 Illumination in talk
7 Set Hold Tone
8 Setting when folded
Menu Numbers

Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press CLEAR to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press ⏎ to return to Standby.

- May not apply to all functions/windows.

More Features

Advanced

Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(▶ P. 2-27)

Desktop Icons

- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Change Theme of Desktop Icons
- Show/Hide Desktop Icons

(▶ P. 2-27)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Softkey Color

(▶ P. 14-4)

Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Change Icon Design of a Theme
- Change Order of Icons of a Theme
- Move Icons to Another Theme
- Delete Icons of a Theme
- Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation

(▶ P. 14-6)

Menu Display Settings

- List View and Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Change Icon Design (Original Theme)
- Change Background (Original Theme)
- Reset Original Theme Settings
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu
- Change Order of Original Menu Items
- Cancel Original Menu Items
- Reset Original Menu

(▶ P. 14-6)

Shortcut Key

- Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

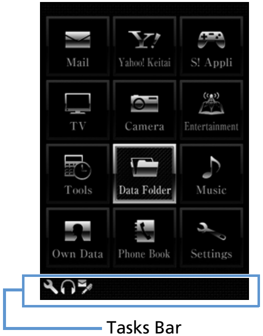
(▶ P. 14-27)

Multitask

Activate one function per group at one time.

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Keitai Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & Music Group	TV, Music

- See P. 15-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Confirm currently active tasks in Tasks Bar.


Mail
Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli
TV
Camera
Entertainment
Tools
Data Folder
Music
Own Data
Phone Book
Settings

Tasks Bar

- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

1 **While using a function** ⇨ MENU ▶

▶ **To Activate Function from Main Menu**

MENU ⇨ Select another function ⇨ ◉

▶ **Mobile Widget**

◎ ⇨ Select a widget ⇨ ◉

▶ **Mail Function**

✉

▶ **To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal**

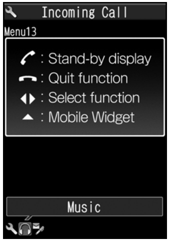
Y!

▶ **To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key**

⌘

Toggling Functions

1 When multiple functions are active ⇨ MENU



Incoming Call

Menu13

✆ : Stand-by display
☎ : Quit function
◀▶ : Select function
▲ : Mobile Widget

Music

Task Switch Window

To return to Standby, press ✆.
Press MENU in Standby to reopen Task Switch window.

2 ◎ ⇨ Select a task indicator ⇨ ●

Tip

- To End Multitask:
  [Task Switch] window ⇨ ☎ ⇨ *Quit Selected* or *Quit All Function* ⇨ ●
- Alternatively, press and hold MENU to end Multitask and return to Standby.

Text Entry

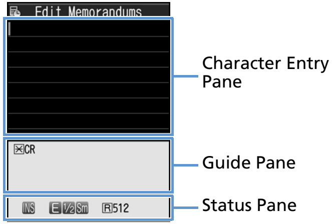
Handset has three text input methods:
5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

- This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

Overview

Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



Text Entry Window

Character Entry Pane

|	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

Guide Pane

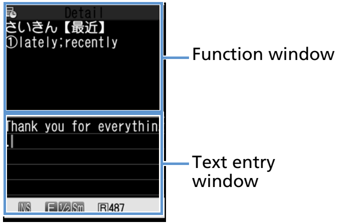
▲▼ CHG	◎ to convert characters
▲▼ All ▲▼ Find	◎ to search Phone Book
◀▶ ▲▼ Area	◎ to specify a text range to copy/cut
⊠ CR	[✱] to insert line feed
⊠ A/a	[✱] to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜)
⌗ AA → aa	[#] to cancel Caps Lock mode
⌗ aa → Aa	[#] to set Shift mode
⌗ Aa → AA	[#] to set Caps Lock mode
⊠ LONG Sel. Area	Press and hold [✱] to select area of text to copy (cut).
⌗ LONG Paste	Press and hold [#] to paste copied or cut text.
↶ Back	[⁄] to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え→う)

Status Pane

2 T9	Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
漢 カナ E 123	Character entry mode
⊠	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-28)
1/1 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
Shift CAPS LOCK	Shift/Caps Lock mode
R	Bytes remaining for text entry
In	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message)

Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Detail
さいきん【最近】
①lately;recently

Thank you for everythin
.

INS E 1/2 Sm R487

Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

Switching Windows

Press ▣ and select *Change Window* to switch windows.

Changing Text Input Methods

1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *CHG Input Method* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a text input method ⇨ ◉

Alternatively, press and hold ✉.

Toggling Character Entry Modes

1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ ✉

Press ✉ to toggle entry modes.
Kanji/hiragana ⇨ Katakana ⇨ Alphanumerics ⇨ Numbers

Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press ✉ to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

Interruptions during Text Entry

When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge Battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry.
Text may not be saved depending on the function.

When ☎ is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press ◉ to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press ◉.

When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.

Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-9.

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

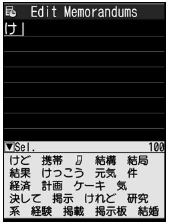
Using Word Prediction

Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow. Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Word Prediction.

<Example> Entering “携帯電話“

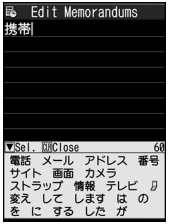
1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ 2 (four times)

“け“ is entered in Character Entry Pane.
Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け“ in Guide Pane.



Edit Memorandums
け
▼Sel. 100
けど 携帯 ♪ 結構 結局
結果 けっこう 元気 件
経済 計画 ケーキ 気
決して 掲示 けれど 研究
系 経験 掲載 掲示板 結婚

2 ○ ⇨ Select “携帯“ ⇨ ◉



Edit Memorandums
携帯
▼Sel. CLRClose 60
電話 メール アドレス 番号
サイト 画面 カメラ
ストラップ 情報 テレビ ♪
変え して します は の
を に する した が

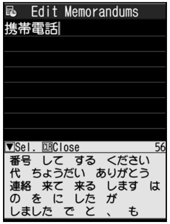
“携帯“ appears in Character Entry Pane.
A suggestion list of words that follow “携帯“ appears in Guide Pane.

■ When Required Word Does Not Appear

⇨ CLEAR

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.

3 ○ ⇨ Select “電話“ ⇨ ◉



Edit Memorandums
携帯電話
▼Sel. CLRClose 56
番号 して する ください
代 ちょうだい ありがとう
連絡 来て 来る します は
の を に した が
しました で と 、 も

■ To Exit Suggestion List

⇨ CLEAR or ☐

Tip

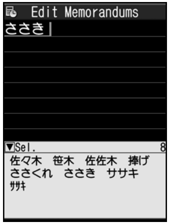
- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold CLEAR to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木“

1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ 3 (once) ⇨ ○ ⇨ 3 (once) ⇨ 2 (twice)



Edit Memorandums
ささき
▼Sel. 8
佐々木 笹木 佐佐木 捧げ
ささくれ ささき ササキ
ｻｻｷ

■ To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It

⇨ ◉

2 ☐ ⇨ Select a word ⇨ ◉

■ To Change Conversion Range

⇨ ○

Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜)

<Example> Entering “が“

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ 2 (once) ⇨ * ⇨ ◉**

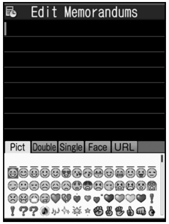
Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ“ to “っ “

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ 4 (three times) ⇨ * ⇨ ◉**

Pictographs & Symbols

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ Y!**



Edit Memorandums

2 **Select a pictograph/symbol ⇨ ◉**

Press ✉ or Y! to toggle pictograph/symbol categories.

■ **To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry**

⇨ ▣

3 CLEAR

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

Emoticons

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Face Mark* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select an emoticon ⇨ ◉**

Common Phrases (Templates)

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Common Phrases* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a phrase ⇨ ◉ (twice)**

Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ Enter hiragana ⇨ Y! ⇨ Select a character ⇨ ◉**

Editing Text

Deletion & Correction

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ Move cursor to the left of the character to delete ⇨ CLEAR**

■ **To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor**

⇨ Press and hold CLEAR

■ **To Delete Entire Text**

⇨ Move cursor to the end of text ⇨ Press and hold CLEAR

2 **Position cursor ⇨ Enter correct characters**

Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Copy* or *Cut* ⇨ ◉**

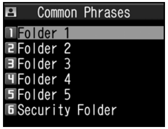
2 Move cursor to beginning of characters ⇨ ◉

3 Move cursor to end of characters ⇨ ◉

4 Position cursor ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Paste*** ⇨ ◉

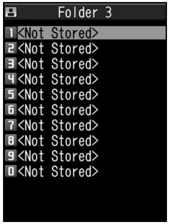
Editing Templates

1 MENU ⇨ ***Own Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Common Phrases*** ⇨ ◉


Common Phrases
1 Folder 1
2 Folder 2
3 Folder 3
4 Folder 4
5 Folder 5
6 Security Folder

Templates (Common phrases) Window

2 Select a folder ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉)


Folder 3
1 <Not Stored>
2 <Not Stored>
3 <Not Stored>
4 <Not Stored>
5 <Not Stored>
6 <Not Stored>
7 <Not Stored>
8 <Not Stored>
9 <Not Stored>
0 <Not Stored>

Templates List

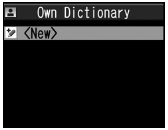
3 Select an entry ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter title ⇨ ◉)

Using Dictionaries

Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Own Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Own Dictionary*** ⇨ ◉


Own Dictionary
<New>

Own Dictionary Window

2 ***<New>*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter reading ⇨ ◉

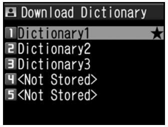
Tip

- To check saved words:
  Select a word ⇨ ◉

Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Download dictionaries from Yahoo! Keitai sites. Dictionary must be enabled in advance.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Own Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***DL Dictionary*** ⇨ ◉



Download Dictionary
1 Dictionary1 ★
2 Dictionary2
3 Dictionary3
4 <Not Stored>
5 <Not Stored>

Downloaded Dictionary Window

2 **Select a dictionary** ⇨ ◉

★ appears next to the enabled dictionary.

Tip

- To disable a dictionary: [Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨ Select a dictionary with ★ ⇨ ◉
- If an emoticon dictionary is enabled, its content is reflected in the emoticon list when entering emoticons.

Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 15-10.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-12).

<Example> Entering "キャンプ"

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ 2 2 (き) ⇨ 8 0 (change to lower case mode) ⇨ 8 1 (ゃ) ⇨ 8 0 (change to upper case mode) ⇨ 0 3 (ん) ⇨ 6 3 (ふ) ⇨ 0 5 (゜)**

2 ⤴ ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Pressing ＊ also adds dakuten (゛) and handakuten (゜) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press ✉ to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.

Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

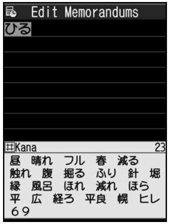
- For key assignment, see P. 15-11.
- When character entry mode is "Number," 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering "春"

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ 6 ⇨ 9**

Word predictions for the key combination appear.



Edit Memorandums
ひる
Kana 23
昼 晴れ フル 春 減る
触れ 腹 掘る ふり 針 堀
縁 風呂 ほれ 減れ ほら
平 広 経ろ 平良 幌 ヒレ
６９

■ **To Change Conversion Range**

⇨ ⊙

■ **Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists**

⇨ #

■ **Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists**

⇨ ✉

2 ◎ ⇨ ◎

Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■ **To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List**

⇨ 📖

For example, if you specify “はる,” then “張る,” “貼る” and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ **To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List**

⇨ ✎

For example, if you specify “はる,” then “春休み,” “遥か” and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ **To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry**

⇨ CLEAR

3 ◉

Re-entering Words

Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

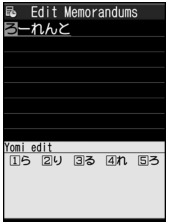
<Example> Entering “らんらんと“

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ 9 (row ら) ⇨ 0 (row わ) ⇨ 9 (row ら) ⇨ 0 (row わ) ⇨ 4 (row た)**

“らんらんと“ does not appear in suggestion list.

2 Y!



Edit Memorandums

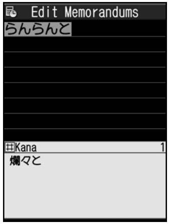
ろーれんと

Yomi edit

1ら 2り 3る 4れ 5ろ

Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row “ら“ appear.

3 **1 (ら) ⇨ 3 (ん) ⇨ 1 (ら) ⇨ 3 (ん) ⇨ 5 (と)**



Edit Memorandums

らんらんと

Kana 1

爛々と

■ **If No Correction is Necessary**

⇨ ◎ to move cursor to the next character

■ **To End Re-entering a Word**

⇨ 📖

The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.

4 ◉

More Features

Advanced

Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(▶ P. 2-27)

Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(▶ P. 2-29)

Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries
- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

(▶ P. 2-29)

Customize

Text Entry

- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size
- Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode

(▶ P. 14-27)

Phone Book

Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

Contacts & Settings

Entry Items

- FN · N · R Name & Reading
- GR Group
- ☎ 4 Phone Numbers
- ✉ 3 E-mail Addresses
- Address
- Location Information
- Birthday
- Memo
- Still Image
- No Entry Number

Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Incoming Image
- Illumination
- Vibration
- Outgoing Message

Others

Secret Data

Handy Functions

Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).

Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den (P. 3-12).

Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-6).

● **Back Up Important Information**

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.

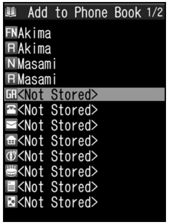
Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example> Enter a name, phone number, e-mail address and specify a group

1 MENU ⇨ ***Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Add to Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ◉

2 FN ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter family name** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Check reading** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ N ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter first name** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Check reading** ⇨ ◉

Reading is entered automatically. Edit as necessary.



Add to Phone Book 1/2
FN Akima
R Akima
N Masami
R Masami
GR <Not Stored>
☎ <Not Stored>
✉ <Not Stored>
<Not Stored>
<Not Stored>
<Not Stored>
<Not Stored>
<Not Stored>

Phone Book Entry Window

3 GR ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a group** ⇨ ◉

4 ☎ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter phone number** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an icon** ⇨ ◉

To save additional numbers, select ☎ <***Not Stored***> and repeat the same step.

5 ✉ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter e-mail address** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an icon** ⇨ ◉

To save additional addresses, select ✉ <***Not Stored***> and repeat the same step.

6 ✉

Setting Incoming Image

1 **[Phone Book Entry] window** ⇨ 🖼 ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Capture an Image with Camera**
Photo Mode ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Capture image ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Select an Image in Data Folder**
Select Image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a still image ⇨ ◉

Tip

- To cancel selected image, select *Release This* and press ◉.

Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from:

- Received calls
- Redial
- Bar Code Reader
- Receives/Sent Address List
- Yahoo! Keitai
- Phone Number Entry window
- Dialed Calls
- Text Reader

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

1 ◯ ⇨ **Select a record** ⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Add to Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Save As a New Entry**
New ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Add Another Entry**
Add ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ (twice)

Phone Book Entry window with the phone number automatically entered opens.

2 **Enter other items** ⇨ ✉ **(**⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉**)**

Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery is empty or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

1 MENU ⇨ ***Phone Book*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ☐ ⇨ ***Add to Phone Book*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Recall*** ⇨ ●

2 Enter each item ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●)

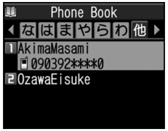
Tip

- Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

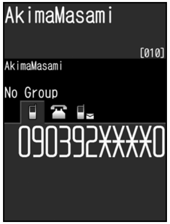
1 MENU ⇨ ***Phone Book*** ⇨ ●



Phone Book
な は ま や ら わ 他
1 AkimaMasami
090392****0
2 OzawaEisuke

Phone Book Entry List

2 ✉ or Y! to switch tabs ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ●



AkimaMasami
[010]
AkimaMasami
No Group
090392XXXX0

Entry Details

3 ◎ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ✆

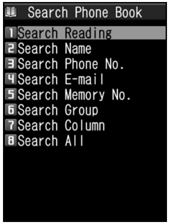
Select a phone number and press ✉ to make a video call.

Tip

- Alternatively, select a phone number from Phone Book Entry List and press ✆ to make a call. If there are multiple entries, the first number is called.

Specifying a Search Method

1 ◎



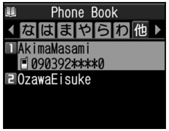
Search Phone Book
1 Search Reading
2 Search Name
3 Search Phone No.
4 Search E-mail
5 Search Memory No.
6 Search Group
7 Search Column
8 Search All

Phone Book Search Window

2 Select a search method ⇨ ●

Search Reading:
Enter a reading and press ◎.
Search Name:
Enter a name and press ◎.
Search Phone No.:
Enter a phone number and press ◎.
Search E-mail:
Enter an e-mail address and press ◎.
Search Memory No.:
Enter three-digit entry number.
Search Group:
Select a group to view saved entries.
Search Column:
Press a key (1 - 0 or ＊) to access the tab corresponding to that key.

Search All:
Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



1 AkimaMasami
090392****0
2 OzawaEisuke

Phone Book Entry List

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by ▤.

Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

Access Phone Book from Received Calls

1 ⊙ ⇨ ▢ ⇨ ***Look-up Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

Access Phone Book from Dialed Calls

1 MENU ⇨ ***Own Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dialed Calls*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▢ ⇨ ***Look-up Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

Access Phone Book from Redial

1 ⊙ ⇨ ▢ ⇨ ***Look-up Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

Access Phone Book from Received Address List

1 **Press and hold** ⊙ ⇨ ▢ ⇨ ***Look-up Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

Access Phone Book from Sent Address List

1 **Press and hold** ⊙ ⇨ ▢ ⇨ ***Look-up Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

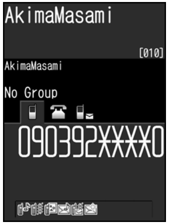
Phone Book Settings

Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



AkimaMasami
[010]
AkimaMasami
No Group
090392XXXX0

♪ Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
✉ Ringtone (Mail)
✧ Illumination (Incoming Calls)
✉ Illumination (Mail)
≋ Vibrator (Incoming Calls)
≋ Vibrator (Mail)
▣ Incoming Image (Calls)
▬ Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)

To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

1 **[Entry Details] ⇨ ⊙ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Ring Tone/Image* ⇨ ◉**

2 ***Voice Call (Recv.)* ⇨ ◉**

3 ***Ring Tone* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a ringtone type ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a ringtone ⇨ ◉)**

To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

1 **[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Group Setting* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select a group ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Ring Tone/Image* ⇨ ◉**

3 ***Mail (Recv.)* ⇨ ◉**

4 ***Illumination* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉**

Note

- Custom Settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

Tip

- To cancel Custom Settings, select an item with ★ and press ✉.

Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

1 **[Entry Details] ⇨ ⊙ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Restrictions* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉**

3 **Select a restriction type ⇨ ◉**

Restrict Dialing:
Permit outgoing calls to only one number. Note that the number can only be dialed from Phone Book.

Call Rejection:
Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

Call Acceptation:
Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

Tip

- ★ indicates currently set restriction; to cancel, select the setting and press ◉.

When *Restrict Dialing* is Set

The following operations are disabled:

- Dialing by Keypad
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book
  (except: calling specified number in Phone Book)

Tip

- When *Restrict Dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Restrict Dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled.
  Cancel *Restrict Dialing* to edit or delete.

Setting Secret Entries

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries.

- ● Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-7).

1 **[Entry Details]** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Set Secret*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- To cancel Secret Setting: [Entry Details] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Release Secret* ⇨ ◉
- Entries saved while Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is active are saved as secret entries.
- When a Tomo-Den entry is set as a secret entry, the entry's Tomo-Den setting is canceled.

Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USIM Operation*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉

2 ***Copy*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone→USIM*** or ***USIM→Phone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

3 **Search Phone Book**

4 **Select an entry** ⇨ ◉

Repeat this step to specify other entries.

5 ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- You must end copying of Phone Book entries to make/receive calls or send/receive messages.

More Features

Advanced

Creating Entries

- Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo
- Save Location Information
- Save Birthday
- Change Entry Number

(▶ P. 2-30)

Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List
- Change Font Size
- Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
- Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

(▶ P. 2-30)

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Check Location Information
- Send Location Information
- Attach Location Information to Image
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry
- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

(▶ P. 2-31)

Customize

Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

(▶ P. 14-12)

S! Addressbook Back-up

Overview

Back up handset Phone Book to server.

- Separate subscription required.
- See SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp) for details.
- After subscribing, network information will be automatically retrieved and ***Auto Sync Settings*** will be set to ***Synchronize***. When Phone Book is edited in these settings, synchronizing will begin after 10 minutes.
- Even if ***Auto Sync Settings*** is set to ***OFF***, it returns to default settings and to ***ON*** again after network information is retrieved.
- After unsubscribing, make sure that ***Auto Sync Settings*** is set to ***OFF***.

Note

- Fully charge battery beforehand.
- Packet transmission fees are incurred for synchronizing, backing up or downloading.
- All data in the server Phone Book will be deleted if ***Synchronize***, ***Sync From Client*** or ***Backup*** is performed after deleting all data in handset Phone Book.
- All data in handset Phone Book will be deleted if ***Synchronize***, ***Sync From Server*** or ***Restore*** is performed after deleting all data in the server Phone Book.
- The following Phone Book items are not synchronized.
  –Ring Tone
  –Illumination
  –Vibrator
  –Incoming Call Image

Using S! Addressbook Back-up

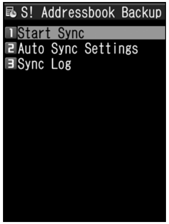
Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to Phone Book backed up on server and bring it up to date with handset's Phone Book.

- The first time you synchronize will be in ***Synchronize*** regardless of the setting.
- Synchronization can be any of the following types.

Synchronize	Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book. Both Phone Books are synced with the newest information.
Sync From Client	Copy updated information to server Phone Book.
Sync From Server	Copy update information to handset Phone Book.
Backup	Back up handset Phone Book to server (note that Server Phone Book is deleted).
Restore	Restore server Phone Book to handset (note that handset Phone Book is deleted).

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Addressbook Back-up*** ⇨ ◉



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

2 ***Start Sync*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉

3 **Select type of synchronization** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Synchronization starts. Synchronization results appear after completion.

4 ✉

Checking Synchronize Log

1 [S! Addressbook Back-up] window ⇨ ***Sync Log*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

S! Addressbook Back-up

- Delete Synchronize Log

(▶ P. 2-32)

Customize

S! Addressbook Back-up

- Set Auto Synchronize
- Set Auto Synchronize Off
- Check Auto Synchronize Settings

(▶ P. 14-12)

Main Menu

Start Here

【Main Menu】 .... P. 2-2

Change Main Menu Theme

【Main Menu】 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉)

Switch to Simple Menu

【Main Menu】 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Simple Menu*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉)

☞ In Simple Menu, font size is larger and menu options are limited to basic ones.

Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

【Main Menu】 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ✉

☞ Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

Desktop Icons

Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

◉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter title ⇨ ◉

Change Icon Image

◉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***CHG Icon Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Icon Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉

☞ To reset icon image, select *Default Icon Image* and press ◉.

Check Icon Information

◉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Icon Info Setting*** ⇨ ◉

Change Order of Desktop Icons

◉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉

Delete Desktop Icons

◉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select icons ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Reset Desktop Icons

◉ ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Reset Desktop*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Change Theme of Desktop Icons

◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Change Desktop*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Show/Hide Desktop Icons

◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display always*** or ***Display at Use*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ◉)

☞ When *Display at Use* is set, Desktop Icons only appear when you press ◉ in Standby.

Text Entry

Start Here

【Text Entry】 window .... P. 2-11

Functions Before Entering Text

Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

【Text Entry】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Lower Case*** or ***Upper Case*** ⇨ ◉

Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Single-Byte*** or ***Double-Byte*** ⇨ ◉

Functions While Entering Text

Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

【Text Entry】window ⇨ Input a character ⇨ ✎

☞ This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

Undo Last Operation

【Text Entry】window ⇨ Press and hold ✎

Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Jump*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***To Beginning*** or ***To End*** ⇨ ◉

Overwrite & Insert Modes

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Overwrite*** or ***Insert*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Text entry windows always open in *Insert* mode.

Insert Line Feed

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ✱

☞ Press ◯ to add a space at the end of text.

Input a Space

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Space*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Press ◯ to add a space at the end of text.

Use Dictionary

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Refer Dic.*** ⇨ ◉

- To Enter a Word
  ⇨ ***Enter Word*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a dictionary ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Read descriptions of the word
- To Select Area
  ⇨ ***Select Area*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Move cursor to beginning of word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Move cursor to end of word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a dictionary ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Read descriptions of the word
- To Enter a Word from Search History
  ⇨ ***Reference History*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a dictionary ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Read descriptions of the word

Quote Text

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Quote Data*** ⇨ ◉

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry
  ⇨ ***Quote Phonebook*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select a data item to quote text from ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉
- To Quote from Account Details
  ⇨ ***Account Details*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉
- To Scan Text by Text Reader
  ⇨ ***Text Reader*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Scan text with camera ⇨ Y!
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader
  ⇨ ***Bar Code Reader*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Scan a bar code with camera ⇨ ◉

Use Kuten Codes

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Kuten Code*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter kuten codes (P. 15-12)

Templates

Start Here

【Templates (Common phrases)】 window .... P. 2-15

【Templates List】 .... P. 2-15

Edit a Folder Name

【Templates (Common phrases)】 window ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Folder Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter folder name ⇨ ◉

Reset a Folder Name

【Templates (Common phrases)】 window ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Reset Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Templates

【Templates List】 ⇨ Select a template ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit phrase ⇨ ◉

Reset Templates

【Templates List】 ⇨ Select a template ⇨ ▤

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

☞ User entries are deleted, and preinstalled templates return to default.

Dictionaries

Start Here

【Own Dictionary】 window.................P. 2-15

【Downloaded Dictionary】 window.....P. 2-16

Own Dictionary

Edit Entries

【Own Dictionary】 window ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Edit word ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit reading ⇨ ◉

Delete Entries

【Own Dictionary】 window ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select entries ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Downloaded Dictionaries

Edit Title

【Downloaded Dictionary】 window ⇨ Select a dictionary ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

View Information

【Downloaded Dictionary】 window ⇨ Select a dictionary ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Dictionary Info*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Dictionaries

【Downloaded Dictionary】 window ⇨ Select a dictionary ⇨ ▣
- To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Phone Book

Start Here

【Phone Book Entry】 window .... P. 2-20
【Phone Book Entry List】 .... P. 2-21
【Entry Details】.. P. 2-21

Creating Entries

Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo

【Phone Book Entry】 window ⇨ ▤ or ▤ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter content ⇨ ◉

Save Location Information

【Phone Book Entry】 window ⇨ ⊕ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***From Position Loc.***, ***From Location History*** or ***From Image*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select location information ⇨ ◉)

☞ To check location information, select *Location Info Detail* and press ◉.

☞ To delete location information, select *Delete Location Info* and press ◉.

Save Birthday

【Phone Book Entry】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter date of birth ⇨ ◉

Change Entry Number

【Phone Book Entry】 window ⇨ № ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Change entry number ⇨ ◉

Phone Book Search

Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Change Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Alphabet, Memory No.*** or ***Group*** ⇨ ◉

Change Font Size

【Phone Book Entry List】/ 【Entry Details】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Font Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Standard Font, Big Font*** (or ***Small Font***) ⇨ ◉

Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

【Entry Details】 ⇨ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Move to Top*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure is available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.

Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

【Entry Details】 ⇨ ⊙ ⇨ Select an e-mail address ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Compose S! Mail

Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

【Entry Details】 ⇨ ⊙ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Compose SMS*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Compose SMS message

Managing Phone Book

Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Ring Tone/Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ ◉

☝ Continue selecting items with ★ to check settings.

Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Ring Tone/Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Release Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Restrictions*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Check Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Restrictions*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Release Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Check Number of Phone Book Entries

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***No. of Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

Edit a Phone Book Entry

【Entry Details】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Edit Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☝ Select No and edit the entry number. The edited entry is saved as a new entry and the original entry remains as before.

Copy a Phone Book Entry

【Entry Details】 ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Copy to USIM*** or ***Copy from USIM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Check Location Information

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select location information ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Read Map*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Send/No Confirmation*** ⇨ ◉)

Send Location Information

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select location information ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Attach to Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨ ✉

Attach Location Information to Image

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select location information ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Attach to Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

Delete Entries

【Phone Book Entry List】 ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ 📄 ⇨ ***Delete Data*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select entries ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Delete Items from an Entry

【Entry Details】 ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete Phone No., Delete Mail Add., Delete Address, Delete Loc. Info, Delete Birthday, Delete Memorandums*** or ***Delete Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Delete an Entry from USIM Card

MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USIM Operation*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USIM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here

【S! Addressbook Back-up】 window ....P. 2-25

Delete Synchronize Log

【S! Addressbook Back-up】 window ⇨ ***Sync Log*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select Log ⇨ ▣

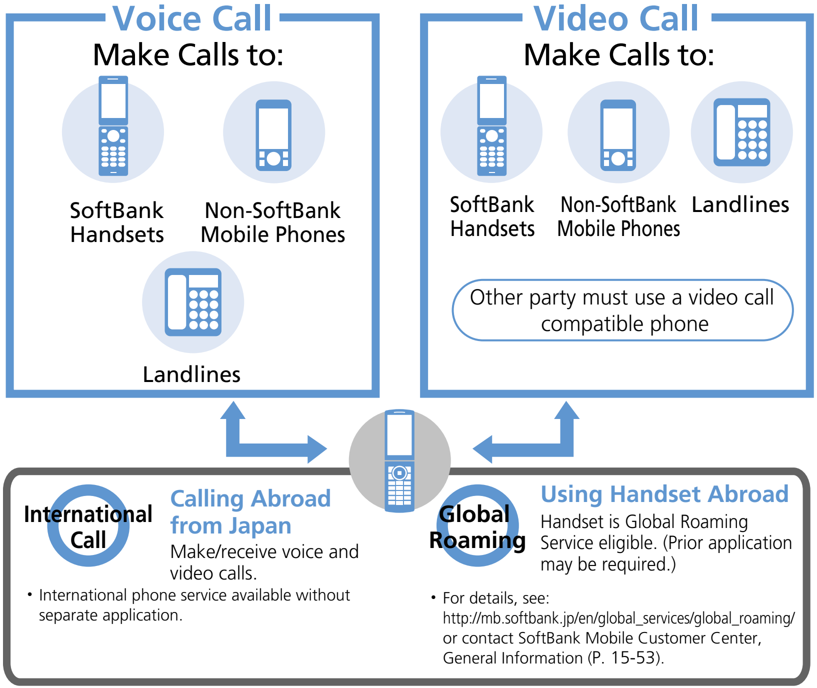
- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select Log ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Calling

Overview **3-2**
Voice Call **3-3**
  Making Voice Calls 3-3
  International Calls 3-3
  Answering Voice Calls 3-4
  Recording the Other Party's Voice 3-4
  Answering Machine 3-4
  Playing Messages 3-5
Video Call **3-7**
  Video Call Window 3-7
  Making Video Calls 3-7
  Answering Video Calls 3-8
Call Logs **3-10**
  Dialing from Call Logs 3-10
  Call Time & Cost 3-11
Speed Dialing **3-12**
  Speed Dial 3-12
  Tomo-Den 3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming) .. **3-13**
  Calling Japan and Other Countries 3-13
  Calling within the Same Country 3-13
Optional Services **3-14**
  Overview 3-14
Advanced Features **3-16**
  Outgoing Call Functions 3-16
  International Calls 3-16
  Handling Incoming Calls 3-16
  Engaged Call Operations 3-17
  Answering Machine 3-18
  Call Logs 3-18
  Speed Dial 3-18
  Optional Services 3-19

Overview

Voice call and video call are available on handset.



Voice Call

Make Calls to:

SoftBank Handsets

Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones

Landlines

Video Call

Make Calls to:

SoftBank Handsets

Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones

Landlines

Other party must use a video call compatible phone

International Call

Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls.

- International phone service available without separate application.

Global Roaming

Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible. (Prior application may be required.)

- For details, see: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/ or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

930N reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

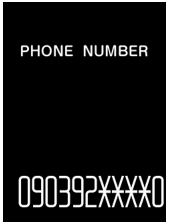
Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

- Restrict Dialing (P. 2-23)
- Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 14-14)
- Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-6)
- PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)

Voice Call

Making Voice Calls

1 **Enter phone number**



PHONE NUMBER

090392XXXX0

Phone Number Entry Window

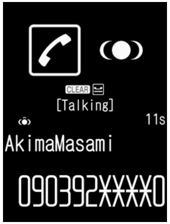
■ **Correcting Misentries**

⇨ ◎ to scroll cursor ⇨ CLEAR to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) ⇨ Reenter number(s)

■ **Deleting Phone Number**

⇨ 📴

2 📞



CLEAR

[Talking]

11s

AkimaMasami

090392XXXX0

Voice Call Window

3 📴 **to end call**

Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when 0 to 9, * or # are pressed during a call.

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.

- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power saving mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 14-5). Handset can be operated in power saving mode in the same way as when Display is lit.
- Call ends when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

Available Keys during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	Press and hold ◎
	▲ or ▼
Hold Call	CLEAR

International Calls

Application not required.

1 **Enter phone number** ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Int'l call*** ⇨ ●

2 **Select a country code** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select an international prefix number** ⇨ ● ⇨ 📞

3 📴 **to end call**

Answering Voice Calls

1 **When a call arrives ⇨ ✆**

2 **⌒ to end call**

Recording the Other Party's Voice

1 **Press and hold ▮ during a call**

A short beep sounds through the earpiece and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

To stop recording, press ◉ or press and hold ▮.

Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

Setting Answering Machine

1 **MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Incoming Call* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Answering Machine* ⇨ ◉**

2 ***ON* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an outgoing message ⇨ ◉**

3 **Enter ring time**

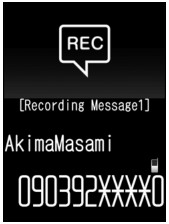
Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forward.
- Answering Machine can be set or canceled by pressing and holding CLEAR in Standby.
- Answering Machine is unavailable when power is off, in a place with no signal reception, or in Emission OFF Mode. Use Voice Mail instead (see P. 3-14).

When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded.

Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.



[Recording Message1]

AkimaMasami

090392XXXX0

■ **To Answer Call during Recording**

⇨ ✆

Activate When Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

1 **When a call arrives ⇨ CLEAR or ▮**

Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.

Note

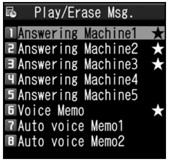
- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

Tip

- Alternatively, press # when a call arrives. When answering with #, handset enters Manner Mode.

Playing Messages

1 ● ⇨ **Select notification** Msg **or** TV Msg ⇨ ●


Play/Erase Msg.
1 Answering Machine1 ★
2 Answering Machine2 ★
3 Answering Machine3 ★
4 Answering Machine4
5 Answering Machine5
6 Voice Memo ★
7 Auto voice Memo1
8 Auto voice Memo2

Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by ★.

2 **Select a message** ⇨ ●

Tip

- To delete a message while playing it:
  ↩ ⇨ *Erase* ⇨ ● ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

Available Keys during Playback

Play Next Message	▼📷
Stop	● or CLEAR
Return a Voice Call	📞
Return a Video Call	✉

Tip

- Pressing CLEAR in Standby also plays recorded voice messages. When there is a voice memo but no voice message, the voice memo plays.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu:
  MENU ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Play/Erase Msg.* ⇨ ●

Available Keys during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	◁▷
Adjust Volume	△▽
	▲ﾏﾅｰ or ▼📷
Pause/Play	●
Stop	CLEAR
Return a Voice Call	📞
Return a Video Call	✉

Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu:
  MENU ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Play/Erase VC Msg.* ⇨ ●

More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(▶ P. 3-16)

International Calls

- Enter "+" to Call Abroad

(▶ P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

(▶ P. 3-16)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Device (Handset and Bluetooth® Device)
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Send Touch Tones

(▶ P. 3-17)

Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages

(▶ P. 3-18)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after "✱" as Sub Address

(▶ P. 14-12)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set an Incoming Call, Message Image or Video

(▶ P. 14-4)

International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code

(▶ P. 14-13)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 14-8)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

(▶ P. 14-9)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Automatically Record During Voice Call
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set a Hold Message
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset

(▶ P. 14-13)

Sounds

- Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message
- Play Recorded Sound
- Delete Recorded Sound

(▶ P. 14-10)

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone

(▶ P. 14-10)

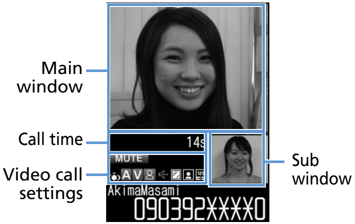
Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls
- Set Illumination for Call Start

(▶ P. 14-28)

Video Call

Video Call Window

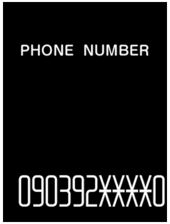

Main window
Call time
Video call settings
Sub window
14s
MUTE
AkimaMasami
090392XXXX0

Video Call Indicators

☊ ☊	Hyper Clear Voice High Hyper Clear Voice Low
A A	Transmitting Audio Transmission Failed
V V	Transmitting Video Transmission Failed
👤 👤	Sending Camera Image Substitute Image
🔊 🔊	Handsfree ON Handsfree OFF
MUTE	Mute
▨	Visual Check
👤 ▨ ▨	Photo Mode Portrait Photo Mode Scenery Photo Mode Close-up

Making Video Calls

1 Enter phone number



PHONE NUMBER

090392XXXX0

Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Misentries

⇨ ◎ to scroll cursor ⇨ Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Numbers

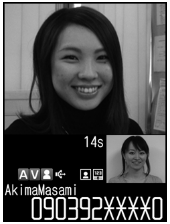
⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select a number ⇨ CLEAR

Press and hold CLEAR to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

■ Deleting Phone Number

⇨ ⌒

2 ✉


14s
AkimaMasami
090392XXXX0

Video Call Window

3 ⌒ to end call

Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when 0 to 9, * or # are pressed during a call.

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Charging may automatically stop or camera image may switch to substitute image if charging while making a video call, depending on temperature and handset usage (ex. also recording TV).
- Call ends when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

Available Keys during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	⇕ or press and hold ⇕ ▯マナー or ▯📷
Hold Call	CLEAR
Toggle Main Window Images	Press and hold ◉ to toggle image as follows: The other party's image → Your image → The other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Toggle Outgoing Camera Image	Press ◉ to toggle Rear Camera and Front Camera.
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	⇔
Mute Audio	MENU or press and hold ▯マナー To cancel mute, press again.

Answering Video Calls

1 **When a video call arrives ⇨ ✆**

2 **⌒ to end call**

More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(▶ P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

(▶ P. 3-16)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Device (Handset and Bluetooth® Device)
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Lighting Time

(▶ P. 3-17)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Set Numbers after "✱" as Sub Address

(▶ P. 14-12)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(▶ P. 14-4)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 14-8)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

(▶ P. 14-9)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set a Hold Message
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset

(▶ P. 14-13)

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone

(▶ P. 14-10)

Video Calls

- Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Reverse Front Camera Image
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

(▶ P. 14-14)

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls
- Set Illumination for Call Start

(▶ P. 14-28)

Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

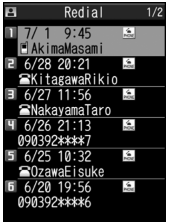
Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.

Voice Calls	
PHONE	Outgoing & Incoming
MISS	Missed
MISS	Unchecked Missed
International Calls	
INT'L PHONE	Outgoing & Incoming
INT'L MISS	Missed
INT'L MISS	Unchecked Missed
Video Calls	
PHONE	Outgoing & Incoming
MISS	Missed
MISS	Unchecked Missed
International Video Calls	
INT'L PHONE	Outgoing & Incoming
INT'L MISS	Missed
INT'L MISS	Unchecked Missed
Answering Machine	
MSG	Voice Messages
MSG	Video Messages
PACKET	Packet Transmission
GMT	Outgoing & Incoming Calls Appears when outside the GMT+09 time zone.

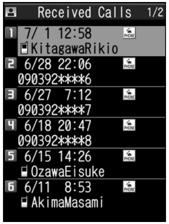
Redial/Received Calls

1 **◎ or ◎**



```
Redial                1/2
1 7/ 1  9:45
  AkimaMasami
2 6/28 20:21
  ☎KitagawaRikio
3 6/27 11:56
  ☎NakayamaTaro
4 6/26 21:13
 090392****7
5 6/25 10:32
  ☎OzawaEisuke
6 6/20 19:56
 090392****6
```

Redial Window



```
Received Calls        1/2
1 7/ 1 12:58
  KitagawaRikio
2 6/28 22:06
 090392****6
3 6/27  7:12
 090392****7
4 6/18 20:47
 090392****8
5 6/15 14:26
  OzawaEisuke
6 6/11  8:53
  AkimaMasami
```

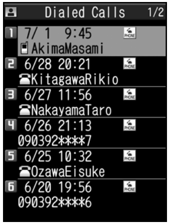
Received Calls Window

2 **Select a record ⇨ ✆ or ✉**

Select a Redial or Received Calls record and press ● to check its details.

Dialed Calls

1 MENU ⇨ ***Own Data*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Dialed Calls*** ⇨ ●



```
Dialed Calls          1/2
1 7/ 1  9:45
  AkimaMasami
2 6/28 20:21
  ☎KitagawaRikio
3 6/27 11:56
  ☎NakayamaTaro
4 6/26 21:13
 090392****7
5 6/25 10:32
  ☎OzawaEisuke
6 6/20 19:56
 090392****6
```

Dialed Calls Window

2 **Select a record ⇨ ✆ or ✉**

Select a Dialed Calls record and press ● to check its details.

Checking Number of Missed Calls

1 MENU ⇨ ***Own Data*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Received Calls*** ⇨ ●

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

2 ***All Calls*** **or** ***Missed Calls*** ⇨ ●

Missed Calls

Illumination flashes.
Select the "Missed Call" icon to check details or select the icon and press and hold CLEAR to turn off illumination.

Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Time/Charge*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Data*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

More Features

Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

(▶ P. 3-18)

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

(▶ P. 3-18)

Customize

Incoming Call Alerts

- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls

(▶ P. 14-8)

Checking Call Logs

- Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When ▼📷 Pressed)
- Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

(▶ P. 14-10)

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit

(▶ P. 14-14)

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Missed Call

(▶ P. 14-28)

Speed Dialing

Speed Dial

Enter Phone Book entry number (000 to 009) and press ✆ for direct access to that entry.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

1 0 **to** 9 ⇨ ✆ **or** ✉

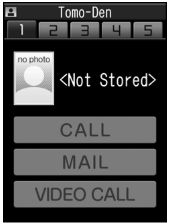
Tomo-Den

Save up to five Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den for quick access.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode, however secret entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den.

Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

1 ✆



Tomo-Den

1 2 3 4 5

no photo

<Not Stored>

CALL

MAIL

VIDEO CALL

Tomo-Den Window

2 ⊙ ⇨ **Select a tab** ⇨ ✉▶

▶ **To Search from Phone Book**

View Phone Book ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Enter the Information**

Direct input ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter items ⇨ ✉

3 **Select a phone number or e-mail address** ⇨ ◉

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

4 ✉

Using Tomo-Den

1 ✆

2 ⊙ ⇨ **Select an entry** ⇨ ***CALL*****,** ***MAIL*** **or** ***VIDEO CALL*** ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image
- To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

(▶ P. 3-18)

Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)

Make calls while overseas.

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application. Details are available online at http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/ or by contacting SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).
- 930N is compatible with 3G and GSM networks.

Calling Japan and Other Countries

1 Press and hold [0]

"+" is entered.

2 Enter country code and phone number (omit first "0" from area code) ⇨ [☎]

Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

Calling within the Same Country

1 Enter phone number with area code ⇨ [☎]

Do not omit "0" from area code. Country code not required.

More Features

Customize

Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Search Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Change Network
- Show Operator Name While Roaming

(▶P. 14-15)

Optional Services

Overview

The following services are available with your handset.

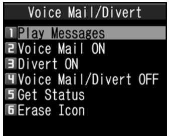
Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. **Missed Call Notification** Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS.
Caller ID	Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls.

* Separate application is required.

Activating Call Forward

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Mail/Divert*** ⇨ ◉



Voice Mail/Divert
1 Play Messages
2 Voice Mail ON
3 Divert ON
4 Voice Mail/Divert OFF
5 Get Status
6 Erase Icon

Voice Mail/Divert Window

2 ***Divert ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls*** or ***Video Calls*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Enter Phone Number**
Enter phone number ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Search from Phone Book**
◎ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ◉ (twice)

3 ***No Answer*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a ring time** ⇨ ◉

To forward calls immediately, select ***Always*** and press ◉.

Tip

- If ***No Answer*** is set, press ☎ to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If ***Always*** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forward for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.

Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

1 **[Voice Mail/Divert] window** ⇨ ***Voice Mail ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***No Answer*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a ring time** ⇨ ◉

To forward calls to Voice Mail Center immediately, select ***Always*** and press ◉.

Optional Services

Tip

- If *No Answer* is set, press ✆ to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If *Always* is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forward for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forward has already been set, Call Forward is canceled.

Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.

1 1 4 1 4 ✆

Follow voice guidance.

To Play Messages

1 **[Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨ *Play Messages* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Canceling Call Forward & Voice Mail

1 **[Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨ *Voice Mail/Divert OFF* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

More Features

Advanced

Call Forward & Voice Mail

- Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages
- Check Current Setting Status

(▶ P. 3-19)

Call Waiting

- Set Call Waiting
- Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
- Check Current Setting Status

(▶ P. 3-19)

Group Calling

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
- Switch Parties
- Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
- Talk with a Specific Party
- End Call with a Specific Party

(▶ P. 3-19)

Call Barring

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
- Cancel Call Barring
- Change Network Password
- Check Current Setting Status

(▶ P. 3-20)

Caller ID

- Show/Hide Phone Number
- Check Current Setting Status

(▶ P. 3-20)

Outgoing Call Functions

Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Notify Caller ID*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF***, ***ON*** or ***Cancel Prefix*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ☎ or ✉

☞ Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.

☞ Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Prefix Numbers*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ☎ or ✉

☞ Store area codes and country codes beforehand. Enter prefixes before making calls.

☞ Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.

☞ 0046010 as *国際発信*, *184* and *186* are set by default.

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold [0] ⇨ Enter country code ⇨ Enter area code ⇨ Enter phone number ⇨ ☎ ⇨ ***Dial*** ⇨ ◉

☞ "+" appears when you press and hold [0], indicating that the international code set in *Auto Int'l Call Set.* is entered.

Handling Incoming Calls

Voice & Video Calls

Reject Calls

When a call arrives ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Call Rejection*** ⇨ ◉

Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives ⇨ ☏ ⇨ To answer call ⇨ ☎

☞ Press ☏ again to end the call on hold.

Forward Calls

When a call arrives ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Call Forwarding*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure is available when Call Forward has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Voice Calls

Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Call Forwarding*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Engaged Call Operations

Start Here

【Voice Call】window .... P. 3-3
【Video Call】window.............................. P. 3-7

Voice & Video Calls

Handsfree

【Voice Call】window/【Video Call】window ⇨ ✉

☞ Press ✉ again to cancel handsfree mode.

Toggle Device (Handset and Bluetooth® Device)

【Voice Call】window/【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Bluetooth/Phone*** ⇨ ◉

Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)

【Voice Call】window/【Video Call】window ⇨ Y!

☞ Press Y! to toggle setting ◉))) High, ◉ Off OFF or ◉) Low.

☞ Unavailable when handsfree is On or when an external device (ex. stereo earphone-microphone) is connected.

Voice Calls

Send Touch Tones

【Voice Call】window ⇨ MENU (twice) ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dialing*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Pause Dial*** ⇨ ◉ (three times)

- To send touch tones all at once:
  ⇨ Press and hold ◎ ⇨ ***Send at one time*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Each time you press ✎, a touch tone sequence until “p” (pause) is sent.

☞ Save touch tones in advance (P. 14-12).

Video Calls

Set Image Quality

【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***V. Call Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Visual Prefer.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

Adjust Brightness

【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***V. Call Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Brightness*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a level ⇨ ◉

☞ Available when sending camera image.

Change White Balance

【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***V. Call Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***White Balance*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

☞ Available when sending camera image.

Change Color Tone

【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***V. Call Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Color Mode Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

☞ Available when sending camera image.

Change Photo Mode

【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***V. Call Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Photo Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a mode ⇨ ◉

☞ Available when sending Rear Camera image.

Backlight Lighting Time

【Video Call】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Display Light*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***All Time ON*** or ***Same as Backlight*** ⇨ ◉

Answering Machine

Start Here

【Play/Delete Voice Message】 window .... P. 3-5

Delete Recorded Messages

【Play/Delete Voice Message】 window ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete This***, ***Delete Rec. Msg.*** or ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Selecting ***Delete All*** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

Call Logs

Start Here

【Redial】 window .... P. 3-10
【Dialed Calls】 window .... P. 3-10
【Received Calls】 window .... P. 3-10

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

Change Font Size

【Redial】 window, 【Dialed Calls】 window or 【Received Calls】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Font Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Standard Font*** or ***Big Font*** ⇨ ◉

Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

【Received Calls】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Ring Time*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Records

【Redial】 window, 【Dialed Calls】 window or 【Received Calls】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- Delete Selected Entry
  ⇨ ***Delete This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- Select Entries to Delete
  ⇨ ***Delete selected*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select records ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- Delete All Entries
  ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Selecting ***Delete All*** in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

Call Time & Cost

Reset Total Call Time

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Time/Charge*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reset Total*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reset Total Duration*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Reset Total Call Cost

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Time/Charge*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reset Total*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reset Total Cost*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter PIN2 ⇨ ◉

Speed Dial

Start Here

【Tomo-Den】 window .... P. 3-12

Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

【Tomo-Den】 window ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select a tab ⇨ ▣

- To Release Selected Entry
  ⇨ ***Release This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- To Release All Entries
  ⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

【Tomo-Den】 window ⇨ ◎ ⇨ Select a tab ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉

To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

【Tomo-Den】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Broadcast Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Create S! Mail ⇨ ✉

Optional Services

Start Here

【Voice Mail/Divert】 window .... P. 3-14
【Voice Call】 window .... P. 3-3

Call Forward & Voice Mail

Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

【Voice Mail/Divert】 window ⇨ ***Erase Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Check Current Setting Status

【Voice Mail/Divert】 window ⇨ ***Get Status*** ⇨ ◉

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Waiting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

【Voice Call】 window ⇨ Call waiting tone sounds ⇨ ✆

☞ Press ◉ to toggle between two parties.

Check Current Setting Status

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Waiting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Get Status*** ⇨ ◉

Group Calling

Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

【Voice Call】 window ⇨ Enter phone number ⇨ ✆

☞ To dial from Phone Book, press ○ or ○, search Phone Book, select a number and then press ✆.

☞ To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press ○ or ○, select a phone number or name and then press ✆.

Switch Parties

【Voice Call】 window ⇨ ◉

☞ Press ◉ to toggle parties.

Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

【Voice Call】 window ⇨ While talking with one party ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Join Multi Party*** ⇨ ◉

Talk with a Specific Party

【Voice Call】 window ⇨ While talking with multiple parties ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Select Ans. Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a party ⇨ ◉

☞ The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

End Call with a Specific Party

【Voice Call】 window ⇨ While talking with multiple parties ⇨ ↱ ⇨ ***Select Disc Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a party ⇨ ◉

Call Barring

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Barring*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Outgoing Calls*** or ***Incoming Calls*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Network Password ⇨ ◉

- ☞ Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when Call Barring is set.
- ☞ When *Bar All Outgoing Calls* or *Bar All Incoming Calls* is set for Call Barring, Call Forward is unavailable (When Call Forward is set, Call Barring is unavailable).
- ☞ If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

Cancel Call Barring

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Barring*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Cancel All Barring*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Network Password ⇨ ◉

Change Network Password

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Barring*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set NW Password*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter current Network Password ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter new Network Password ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter new Network Password again for confirmation ⇨ ◉

Check Current Setting Status

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Barring*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Get Status*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

Caller ID

Show/Hide Phone Number

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Caller ID Notification*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Activate/Deactivate*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Check Current Setting Status

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Optional Services*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Caller ID Notification*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Get Status*** ⇨ ◉

Security

PIN Settings **4-2**
- Setting PIN1 Entry 4-2
- Changing PIN1/PIN2 4-2

Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use **4-3**
- Dial Lock 4-3
- Original Lock 4-3
- Disabling Keypad 4-4
- Secure Remote Lock 4-5
- IC Card Authentication 4-5

Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls **4-6**
- Rejecting Calls without Caller ID 4-6
- Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers 4-6
- Delaying Ringtone 4-6
- Emission OFF Mode 4-6

Secret Modes **4-7**
- Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode 4-7
- Hiding Handset Data 4-7

PIN Settings

Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

1. MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***PIN Setting*** ⇨ ◉
2. **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉
3. ***PIN1 Code Entry Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter PIN1** ⇨ ◉

Changing PIN1/PIN2

- *PIN1 Code Entry Set* must be set to *ON* before changing PIN1.

1. MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***PIN Setting*** ⇨ ◉
2. **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉
3. ***Change PIN1 Code* or *Change PIN2 Code*** ⇨ ◉
4. **Enter current PIN1/PIN2** ⇨ ◉
5. **Enter new PIN1/PIN2** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation** ⇨ ◉

Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Lock*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉

3 ***Dial Lock*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
  - Power on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
  - Answering incoming voice/video calls

Canceling Dial Lock

1 **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉

If incorrect Security Code is entered, press ▭ and enter correct Security Code.

Tip

- If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

Original Lock

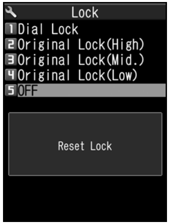
Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc). Select from three levels (high, medium or low) and customize as required.

● For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 11-3.

Activating Original Lock

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Lock*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉



Lock
1 Dial Lock
2 Original Lock(High)
3 Original Lock(Mid.)
4 Original Lock(Low)
5 OFF
Reset Lock

Lock Window

3 **Select an Original Lock level** ⇨ ◉

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

Tip

- To edit title:
  [Lock] window ⇨ Select an Original Lock ⇨ ▯ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

When Original Lock is Set

Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/data. Setting returns when handset returns to Standby.

Note

- *Dial/Sending Mail* and *Incoming/Mail Disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.

Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Customizing Original Lock

Set lock per function, group or category.

🔑 Some functions/groups are locked.

ALL 🔑 All functions in Group/Category are locked.

Customize by Function/Data

1 **[Lock] window ⇨ Select an Original Lock ⇨ ✉**

2 **Select a category ⇨ ●**

3 **Select a group ⇨ ●**

4 **Select an item ⇨ ●**

Checked items are locked. To uncheck an item, select the item and press ●.

■ **To Select All Functions**

⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Select All*** ⇨ ●

■ **To Deselect All Functions**

⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ●

5 **✉ (three times)**

Customize by Category or Group

1 **[Lock] window ⇨ Select an Original Lock ⇨ ✉**

2 **Select a category (⇨ ● ⇨ Select a group)**

3 **▣ ⇨ *Select* ⇨ ●**

To deselect, press ▣, select ***Release*** and then press ●.

■ **To Select Lock for Category or Group**

⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Select All*** ⇨ ●

■ **To Cancel Lock for Category or Group**

⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ●

4 **✉ (⇨ ✉)**

Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys when handset is closed or when handset is not operated for a certain period of time.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 **MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Security* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Keypad Lock* ⇨ ●**

2 **Enter Security Code ⇨ ●▶**

▶ **To Lock When Handset Closed**

After Closed ⇨ ● ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ●

▶ **To Lock After Handset Closed a Certain Time**

Timer ⇨ ● ⇨ Select time until lock activates ⇨ ●

3 **✉**

When Keypad Lock is Set

All key operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.

When a call arrives or the alarm is activated, 🔑 appears at the bottom of Display to indicate some keys are operable.

Tip

- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Keypad Lock* is set.

Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

1 **When Keypad Lock is set ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ●**

Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. All key operations are disabled except Power Key. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp), or access My SoftBank from your handset:
Y! ➪ *メニューリスト* (Menu List) ➪ ◉ ➪ ***My SoftBank*** ➪ ◉

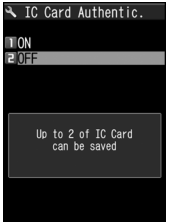
IC Card Authentication

Hold a FeliCa compatible contactless IC card over handset to authenticate the user ID without canceling Dial Lock or Keypad Lock, or without entering a code number.

- IC Card Authentication is available even when IC Card Lock is activated.
- Register up to two contactless IC cards.

Activating IC Card Authentication

1 MENU ➪ ***Settings*** ➪ ◉ ➪ ***Security*** ➪ ◉ ➪ ***IC Card Authentic.*** ➪ ◉ ➪ **Enter Security Code** ➪ ◉


IC Card Authentic.
1 ON
2 OFF
Up to 2 of IC Card can be saved

IC Card Authentication Window

2 ***ON*** ➪ ◉ ➪ ***OK*** ➪ ◉

■ **To Activate Registered IC Card**
➪ ***ON*** ➪ ◉

3 **Place IC Card over logo**
disappears after card is registered.

Tip

- To deactivate Authentication:
  [IC Card Authentication] window ➪ *OFF* ➪ ◉ ➪ *YES* or *NO* ➪ ◉
  Select *YES* to delete or *NO* not to delete all registered IC Card data.

Registering IC Card

1 **[IC Card Authentication] window** ➪ ⤴ ➪ ***New Ext. IC Card*** ➪ ◉

2 **Place IC Card over logo**
disappears after card is registered.

Tip

- To delete IC card registration:
  [IC Card Authentication] window ➪ ⤴ ➪ *Del. Ext. IC Card* ➪ ◉ ➪ Select IC Card to delete ➪ ◉ ➪ ✉ ➪ *YES* ➪ ◉

Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Setting W/O ID*** ⇨ ◉

2 Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉

3 ***Unknown***, ***Payphone*** or ***User Unset*** ⇨ ◉

4 ***Reject*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after step 3: *Accept* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Select Ring Tone* or *Select Calling Disp*. ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select type ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select a ringtone or image ⇨ ◉

Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reject Unknown*** ⇨ ◉

2 Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉

3 ***Reject*** ⇨ ◉

Note

- This procedure is unavailable when *Set Mute Seconds* under *Ring Time (sec.)* is set to *ON* (P. 4-6).

Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after step 2: *Accept* ⇨ ◉

Delaying Ringtone

Delay ringtone, for calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book. In addition, set ***Missed Calls Display*** to ***Not Display*** so missed calls with a short ring time do not appear in Received Calls. This can prevent you from accidentally returning calls from nuisance calls.

- This procedure is unavailable when *Reject Unknown* is set to *Reject*.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Incoming Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Ring Time (sec.)*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***Set Mute Seconds*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time before ringtone plays

3 ***Missed Calls Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** or ***Not Display*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- For calls from numbers in Secret Phone Book, only the number appears when *Set Mute Seconds* is set to *OFF*.
- Ringing starts in zero seconds when *Set Mute Seconds* is *OFF*.

Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Emission OFF Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.

Secret Modes

Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.
Secret Mode: View all data and secret data.
Secret Data Only Mode: Only secret data is available for Phone Book and Schedule, although all data and secret data can be viewed for images, mail, and bookmarks.

Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Secret Mode*** **or** ***Secret Data Only Mode*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉

Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

1 **In Standby,** ⊖

Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- Storable file types: Images, videos, received and sent messages and bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser).
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
  - My Picture: Approx. 4 MB
  - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

Moving Data to Secret Folders

1 **Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode**

2 **From a folder, select an item** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Keep in Secret*** ⇨ ◉

Moving Data from Secret Folders

1 **Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode**

2 **In a folder list** ⇨ ***Secret*** ⇨ ◉

3 **Select an item** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Put Out*** ⇨ ◉

4 **Select a destination folder** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.

Mail

Overview 5-2

Sending Messages 5-3

- Sending S! Mail 5-3
- Sending SMS Messages 5-5

Receiving & Opening Messages 5-6

- Opening New Messages...................................... 5-6
- Opening Inbox Messages.................................... 5-6
- Replying to Messages... 5-7
- Using Mail List 5-7

Handling Messages 5-9

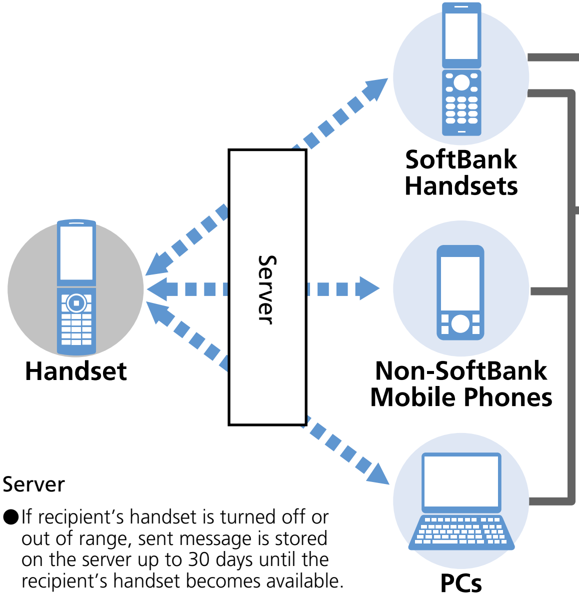
- Message Storage Locations 5-9
- Opening Sent & Received Messages 5-9
- Sorting Messages.. 5-11
- Using Tomomato-Mail 5-11
- Prohibiting Access to Messages........................ 5-12
- Saving S! Mail Attachments............................. 5-13

Advanced Features 5-15

- Sending Messages 5-15
- Receiving/Opening Messages 5-18
- Managing/Using Messages 5-19

Overview

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS.



Server

- ●If recipient's handset is turned off or out of range, sent message is stored on the server up to 30 days until the recipient's handset becomes available.

Available Mail Services

SMS	Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.
S! Mail (Separate contract required)	Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

Customize Handset E-mail Address.
Effective for blocking spam.

Graphic Mail

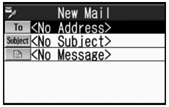
Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.

Sending S! Mail

1 **Press and hold ✉**


New Mail
To <No Address>
Subject <No Subject>
<No Message>

Composition Window

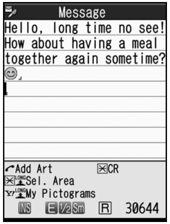
2 **Select address field ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Enter Address* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter address ⇨ ◉**

To add more recipients, Select address field, press ◉ and repeat the same step. After adding recipients, press ✉.

3 **Select Subject field ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter subject ⇨ ◉**

If 1/1 (double-byte mode) appears, switch to single-byte mode (P. 2-28).

4 **Select text field ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ◉**


Message
Hello, long time no see!
How about having a meal
together again sometime?
😊,

Add Art CR
Sel. Area
My Pictograms
INS E 1/2 Sm R 30644

Text Entry Window

5 **✉**

■ **To Cancel Transmission**

⇨ When ***Start Packet Connection*** appears ⇨ ◉; or
⇨ During Transmission ⇨ Y!

■ **If *Resend mail?* Appears**

⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
- Melodies
- Documents
- Books
- Phone Book entries
- Schedule (To Do List)
- Videos
- PDF files
- Music (Songs)
- Widgets
- Account Details
- Bookmarks

● For information about image, video, melody, PDF, other document and music files, see P. 12-2.

1 **[Composition] window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ *Attach File* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select a file type ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉**

■ **Images with Large File Size**

⇨ ***Attach Mail***, ***QVGA Scale down*** or ***VGA Scale down*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Check an image ⇨ ◉)

Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.

Tip

- To open or play an attached file: Select the file ⇨ ◉

Graphic Mail

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

1 **[Text Entry] window ⇨ ✎ ⇨ A ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a font size ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ◉**

2 **▤ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✣ ⇨ Select a background color ⇨ ◉**

Press ✉ while selecting to toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.

3 **▣ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉**

■ **Inserting Images with Large File Size**

⇨ ***Insert Mail*** or ***SubQCIF Scale down*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Check an image ⇨ ◉)

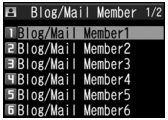
4 **A ⇨ ◉ ⇨ A Begin ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ◉ ⇨ A ⇨ ◉ ⇨ A End ⇨ ◉**

5 **⌸ ⇨ ◉**

Adding Addresses to Blog/Mail Member List

Group addresses into Blog/Mail Member list to upload blog images and send messages by group.

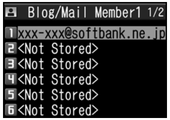
1 **MENU ⇨ *Own Data* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Blog/Mail Member* ⇨ ◉**



```
Blog/Mail Member 1/2
1 Blog/Mail Member1
2 Blog/Mail Member2
3 Blog/Mail Member3
4 Blog/Mail Member4
5 Blog/Mail Member5
6 Blog/Mail Member6
```

Blog/Mail Member List

2 **Select a Blog/Mail Member list ⇨ ◉**



```
Blog/Mail Member1 1/2
1 xxx-xxx@softbank.ne.jp
2 <Not Stored>
3 <Not Stored>
4 <Not Stored>
5 <Not Stored>
6 <Not Stored>
```

Blog/Mail Member Window

3 ***<Not Stored>*▶**

▶ **To Enter an Address**

✉ ⇨ **Enter address ⇨ ◉**

▶ **To Save an Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List**

⌸ ⇨ ***Look-up address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone Book***, ***Sent Address*** or ***Received Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an address ⇨ ◉ (twice)

Specifying as Blog Upload Destination

Set one Blog/Mail Member as a blog upload destination.

1 **[Blog/Mail Member List] ⇨ Y!**

Blog/Mail Member ★ specified as upload destination appears.

Tip

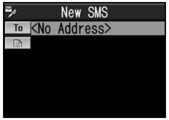
- To cancel blog upload destination: Select Blog/Mail Member with ★ ⇨ Y!

Sending Messages

Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, using recipient's phone number.

1 ✉ ⇨ ***Compose SMS*** ⇨ ◉


New SMS
To <No Address>

SMS Composition Window

2 To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Enter Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter phone number** ⇨ ◉

3 ▤ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter text** ⇨ ◉

4 ✉

More Features

Advanced

Composing Messages
- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Enter Address from Blog/Mail Member List
- Set To, Cc or Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature
- Enter My Pictograms
- Attach Location Information
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

(▶ P. 5-15)

Sending Messages
- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Check Delivery
- Save Messages to Draft
- Quit Composing and Delete Message

(▶ P. 5-16)

Attaching Files
- Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

(▶ P. 5-16)

Blog/Mail Member
- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List
- Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

(▶ P. 5-16)

Graphic Mail
- Add/Edit Text Decoration
- Undo
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Decoration
- Create Graphic Mail Automatically
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

(▶ P. 5-17)

Customize

Display Settings
- Set an Outgoing Message Image

(▶ P. 14-4)

S! Mail Settings
- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Set to Check Delivery

(▶ P. 14-16)

SMS Settings
- Set to Check Delivery
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

(▶ P. 14-16)

Key Illumination
- Set Illumination for Sending Messages

(▶ P. 14-28)

Receiving & Opening Messages

Opening New Messages

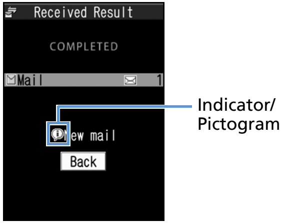
Received Result window opens for new messages.

- By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

When an S! Mail is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears in Received Result Window and Message List.

Set the Keyword setting on, to show Keyword indicators when messages include user-set keywords (P. 14-16).



Received Result
COMPLETED
Mail 1
New mail
Back

Received Result Window

- Pictograms

	Hurry	☝	Advice
♥	Like		Cheer
	Dislike		Join
	Happy	✎	Impression
	Angry	✋	Request
	Sad		Notice
☺	Fun		OK
!!	Surprise		Reply
?	Question	ⓘ	Other

1 **[Received Result] window ⇨ *Mail* ⇨ ◉**

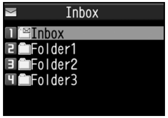
2 **Select a message ⇨ ◉**

Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from desktop notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.
- — appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

Opening Inbox Messages

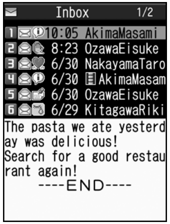
1 **✉ ⇨ *Inbox* ⇨ ◉**



Inbox
1 Inbox
2 Folder1
3 Folder2
4 Folder3

Folder List

2 **Select a folder ⇨ ◉**

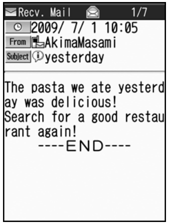


Inbox 1/2
1 10:05 AkimaMasami
2 8:23 OzawaEisuke
3 6/30 NakayamaTaro
4 6/30 AkimaMasam
5 6/30 OzawaEisuke
6 6/29 KitagawaRiki
The pasta we ate yesterday was delicious!
Search for a good restaurant again!
----END----

Message List

Receiving & Opening Messages

3 **Select a message ⇨ ●**



Recv. Mail 1/7
2009/ 7/ 1 10:05
From AkimaMasami
Subject yesterday

The pasta we ate yesterday was delicious!
Search for a good restaurant again!
----END----

Message Window

To check previous/next message, press ⊙.

Tip

- Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

Replying to Messages

1 **[Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉**

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To Sender* or *To All* ⇨ ●

2 **Edit subject/text ⇨ ✉**

Replying (Quote Message)

1 **[Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨ Y!**

2 **Edit subject/text ⇨ ✉**

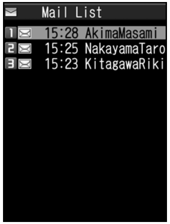
Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

1 **✉ ⇨ *Server Mail* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Mail List* ⇨ ● (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●)**



Mail List
1 15:28 AkimaMasami
2 15:25 NakayamaTaro
3 15:23 KitagawaRiki

Mail List

2 **Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Message Receive* ⇨ ●▶**

▶ To Receive a Message

Receive This ⇨ ●

▶ To Receive Multiple Messages

Receive Selected ⇨ ● ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

▶ To Receive All Messages

Receive All ⇨ ●

Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.

More Features

Advanced

Receiving Messages
- Manually Retrieve Messages

(▶ P. 5-18)

Checking Messages
- Retrieve Complete S! Mail
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information

(▶ P. 5-18)

Server Message Operations
- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information
- Forward a Server Message
- Delete Server Messages
- Check Server Memory Status

(▶ P. 5-18)

Customize

Display Settings
- Set an Incoming Message Image or Video
- Set an Image for New Messages or Received Result Window
- Show Information of Messages Received While Watching TV

(▶ P. 14-4)

Incoming Message Alerts
- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for New Messages
- Set an Incoming Message Image

(▶ P. 14-8)

Incoming Message Settings
- Customize E-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Show Keyword Indicators
- Delete Keywords
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Set Manual Receive

(▶ P. 14-16)

Reply Settings
- Change Quotation Marks

(▶ P. 14-17)

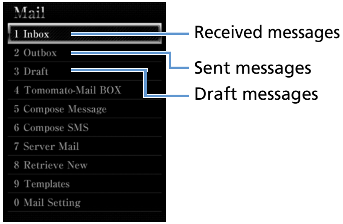
Key Illumination
- Set Illumination for Receiving Messages
- Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail
- Set Illumination for New Message

(▶ P. 14-28)

Handling Messages

Message Storage Locations

Press ✉ to open Mail Menu.
Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.

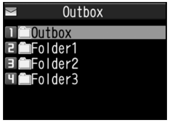

Mail
1 Inbox
2 Outbox
3 Draft
4 Tomomato-Mail BOX
5 Compose Message
6 Compose SMS
7 Server Mail
8 Retrieve New
9 Templates
0 Mail Setting
Received messages
Sent messages
Draft messages

Message Menu

Opening Sent & Received Messages

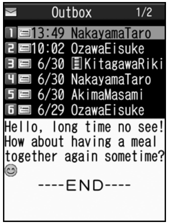
<Example> Open a Sent Message

1 ✉ ⇨ ***Outbox*** ⇨ ◉


Outbox
1 Outbox
2 Folder1
3 Folder2
4 Folder3

Folder List

2 **Select a folder** ⇨ ◉

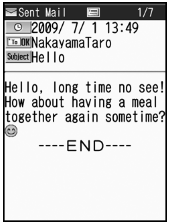


1 13:49 NakayamaTaro
2 10:02 OzawaEisuke
3 6/30 KitagawaRiki
4 6/30 NakayamaTaro
5 6/30 AkimaMasami
6 6/29 OzawaEisuke

Hello, long time no see!
How about having a meal together again sometime?
☺
----END----

Message List

3 **Select a message** ⇨ ◉


Sent Mail 1/7

2009/ 7/ 1 13:49
To OK NakayamaTaro
Subject Hello

Hello, long time no see!
How about having a meal together again sometime?
☺
----END----

Message Window

To check previous/next message, press ◎.

Tip

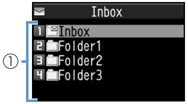
- When Outbox/Inbox becomes full, the oldest messages in Outbox/Inbox are deleted next time a new message is sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.

Handling Messages

Windows & Indicators

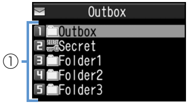
Check message status, attachment type, etc. by indicators.

Folder Lists



Inbox
1 Inbox
2 Folder1
3 Folder2
4 Folder3

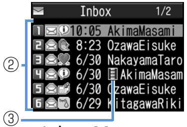
Inbox Folder List



Outbox
1 Outbox
2 Secret
3 Folder1
4 Folder2
5 Folder3

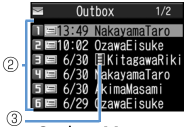
Outbox Folder List

Message Lists



Inbox 1/2
1 10:05 AkimaMasami
2 8:23 OzawaEisuke
3 6/30 NakayamaTaro
4 6/30 AkimaMasam
5 6/30 OzawaEisuke
6 6/29 KitagawaRiki

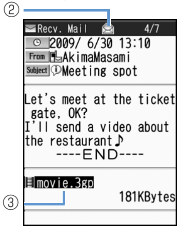
Inbox Message List



Outbox 1/2
1 13:49 NakayamaTaro
2 10:02 OzawaEisuke
3 6/30 KitagawaRiki
4 6/30 NakayamaTaro
5 6/30 AkimaMasami
6 6/29 OzawaEisuke

Outbox Message List

Message Windows

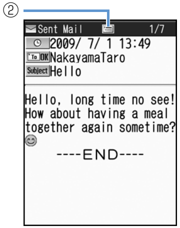


Recv. Mail 4/7
2009/ 6/30 13:10
From AkimaMasami
Subject Meeting spot

Let's meet at the ticket gate, OK?
I'll send a video about the restaurant♪
----END----

movie.3gp
181KBytes

Received Message Window



Sent Mail 1/7
2009/ 7/ 1 13:49
To OK NakayamaTaro
Subject Hello

Hello, long time no see!
How about having a meal together again sometime?
☺
----END----

Sent Message Window

①	Folder Type General Folder Secret Folder
②	Message Status Unread Read Protected (Unread) Protected (Read) Forwarded Replied Sent to a Single Recipient Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	Message Type SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card S! Mail Notification Attachment Type Image Video Melody (Tones/Ringtones) Music Copy-protected File Phone Book Entry, Schedule Event or Bookmark Widget Book PDF Document Forwarded Server Mail Others Multiple Files

The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

Folder Contains Unread Messages
Locked Folder
Folder with Auto Sort Set
Protected Message
Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted
Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
Attachment Deleted
High Priority Message

Tip

- To open/play copy-protected files, save files to Data Folder.
- 📄 appears in Subject field when Delivery Report is received.

Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

1 **[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Auto-sort* ⇨ ◉▶**

- ▶ **To Sort by Address**
  Address Sort ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Look-up Address***, ***Look-up Group***, ***Look-up Member*** or ***Enter Address*** ⇨ ◉
- ▶ **To Sort by Subject**
  Subject Sort ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter subject ⇨ ◉
- ▶ **To Sort by Reply Failed, Send Failed or Unregistered Address**
  Reply Impossible, ***Sent Impossible*** or ***Unregistered Add.*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received Address List or Sent Address List in Look-up address.

Canceling Auto Sort

1 **[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Auto-sort* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select a criterion ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Release* ⇨ ◉▶**

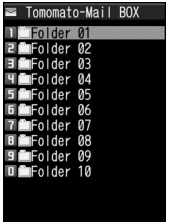
- ▶ **To Cancel a Criteria**
  Release This ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- ▶ **To Cancel Multiple Criteria**
  Release Selected ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select criteria ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- ▶ **To Cancel All Criteria**
  Release All ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Using Tomomato-Mail

Store e-mail addresses in Tomomato-Mail and check messages with stored addresses by selecting Tomomato-Mail BOX.

Checking Tomomato-Mail

1 **✉ ⇨ *Tomomato-Mail BOX* ⇨ ◉**



Tomomato-Mail BOX

1 Folder 01
2 Folder 02
3 Folder 03
4 Folder 04
5 Folder 05
6 Folder 06
7 Folder 07
8 Folder 08
9 Folder 09
0 Folder 10

Tomomato-Mail Folder List

2 **Select a folder ⇨ ◉**

Storing Tomomato-Mail

1 **[Tomomato-Mail Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ✉ ▶**

▶ **To Enter an Address**

Enter Address ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Address ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Store E-Mail Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List**

Phonebook, ***Sent Address*** or ***Received Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an address ⇨ ◉

Canceling Tomomato-Mail

1 **[Tomomato-Mail Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Unregister* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Prohibiting Access to Messages

Setting Mail Box Lock

1 **✉ ⇨ *Mail Setting* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Mail Box Lock* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select a mail box ⇨ ◉**

Repeat step 2 to specify other boxes.

3 **✉**

Setting Folder Lock

1 **[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Folder Lock* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Locked folders are indicated by 🔒.

Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

Storing Messages in Secret Folders

Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-7).

- Unread Messages, S! Mail with Text Unreceived or delivery reports cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

1 **[Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Keep in Secret* ⇨ ◉ ▶**

▶ **To Store a Message**

Keep This ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Store Multiple Messages**

Keep Selected ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another message) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Store All Messages in a Folder**

Keep All ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

1 **[Folder List] ⇨ *Secret* ⇨ ◉**

2 **Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Put Out* ⇨ ◉ ▶**

▶ **To Return a Message**

Put Out This ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Return Multiple Messages**

Put Out Selected ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another message) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Return All Messages**

Put Out All ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Saving S! Mail Attachments

Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music, Flash®, Book and PDF Files

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ *Save Data* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

2 Select a folder ⇨ ◉

■ **To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.**

⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a view ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Check an image ⇨ ◉)

Select *NO* and press ◉ when you do not want to set the image.

■ **To Set a Melody as Ringtone, etc.**

⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

Select *NO* and press ◉ when you do not want to set the melody.

Saving an Image Inserted in Text

1 [Message] window ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ *Save Insert Image* ⇨ ◉

2 Select an image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉

■ **To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.**

⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a view ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Check an image ⇨ ◉)

Select *No* and press ◉ when you do not want to set the image.

Saving a Phone Book Entry

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ *Phone* or *USIM* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *New* ⇨ ◉

2 Edit each item ⇨ ✉

Saving a Schedule Event

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select Schedule data ⇨ ◉ (twice)

Saving a Bookmark

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select a link (URL, etc.) ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Select a destination ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉)

Note

- Mail-attached phone book entries, schedule events or bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.

More Features

Advanced

Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses
- Delete All Messages in Tomomato-Mail Folder

(▶ P. 5-19)

Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text
- Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member List
- Search for Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Font Size of Text
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Reset Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report

(▶ P. 5-21)

Customize

Message View Settings & Others

- Set Message List View
- Play Attached Melodies Automatically
- Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll
- Set Font Size of Text
- Check Mail Settings
- Reset Mail Settings

(▶ P. 14-17)

SMS Server Settings

- Change SMS Center Address
- Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address

(▶ P. 14-18)

Sending Messages

Start Here

【Composition】window .... P. 5-3
【Text Entry】window .... P. 5-3
【Blog/Mail Member List】 .... P. 5-4
【Blog/Mail Member】window .... P. 5-4
【SMS Composition】window .... P. 5-5

Composing Messages

Enter Address from Phone Book

【Composition】window/【SMS Composition】window ⇨ To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phonebook*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an e-mail address or phone number ⇨ ◉

Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

【Composition】window/【SMS Composition】window ⇨ To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Sent Address*** or ***Received Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an e-mail address/phone number ⇨ ◉ (twice)

☞ Alternatively, select To and press ◎ to open Sent/Received Address List.

Enter Address from Blog/Mail Member List

【Composition】window ⇨ To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Blog/Mail Member*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a Blog/Mail Member list ⇨ ◉

☞ All addresses in the selected Blog/Mail Member list are entered in the address field.

☞ You must save addresses to a Blog/Mail Member list in advance.

Set To, Cc or Bcc

【Composition】window ⇨ To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an address ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Change Rcv. Type*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***To***, ***Cc*** or ***Bcc*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.

☞ Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.

☞ When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

Delete an Address

【Composition】window ⇨ To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an address ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Receiver*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Insert Header/Signature

【Composition】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add Header*** or ***Add Signature*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Save header/signature in advance.

Enter My Pictograms

【Text Entry】window ⇨ Press and hold Y! ⇨ Select a pictograph ⇨ ◉ ⇨ CLEAR

☞ Toggle categories by pressing ✉ or Y!.

☞ Only available for S! Mails.

Attach Location Information

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Paste Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***From Position Loc.***, ***From Loc. History***, ***From Phonebook***, ***Account Details*** or ***From Image*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Select Location Information ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉)

☞ Only available for S! Mails.

Delete Text

【Composition】window/【SMS Composition】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Erase Message*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Change SMS Message to S! Mail

【SMS Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***S! Mail Conversion*** ⇨ ◉

Sending Messages

Set Priority (S! Mail)

【Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Priority*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***High***, ***Normal*** or ***Low*** ⇨ ◉

Server Storage Period (SMS)

【SMS Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***SMS Valid. Per.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a period ⇨ ◉

☞ Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

☞ When *None* is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

Check Delivery

【Composition】 window/ 【SMS Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delivery Report*** or ***SMS Report Req.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

☞ When *ON* is set, handset receives a delivery report.

Save Messages to Draft

【Composition】 window/ 【SMS Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Save*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

Quit Composing and Delete Message

【Composition】 window/ 【SMS Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Attaching Files

Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail

【Composition】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Activate Camera*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Photo Mode*** or ***Movie Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Shoot image/video ⇨ ◉

Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

【Composition】 window ⇨ Select an attached file ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Att. File*** or ***Del All Att.Files*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Blog/Mail Member

Edit an Address

【Blog/Mail Member】 window ⇨ Select an address ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit address ⇨ ◉

Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List

【Blog/Mail Member】 ⇨ Select an address ⇨ ▣

- To Select *Delete this*
  ⇨ *Delete this* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete all*
  ⇨ *Delete all* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name

【Blog/Mail Member List】 ⇨ Select a Blog/Mail Member list ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Member Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit name ⇨ ◉

Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

【Blog/Mail Member List】 ⇨ Select a Blog/Mail Member list ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Reset Member Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Graphic Mail

Add/Edit Text Decoration

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ✎ ⇨ Edit ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select beginning of characters ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select end of characters ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select effects menu ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Apply or Change effects

☝ Select Edit , press Y!, select *YES* and then press ◉ to select the entire text.

Undo

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ✎ ⇨ Undo ⇨ ◉

Preview Graphic Mail

【Text Entry】window ⇨ ✎ ⇨ 🔍 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ CLEAR or Y! to close preview

Cancel All Decoration

【Text Entry】 window ⇨ ✎ ⇨ Reset All ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ◉)

Create Graphic Mail Automatically

【Text Entry】window ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ✎ ⇨ Auto ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! to toggle effects ⇨ ◉

☝ Emotion of the message is detected from the entered text, and a set of effects that matches the emotion is automatically applied.

☝ Press ▣ to toggle insert and no insert for pictographs and emoticons.

Save Graphic Mail as a Template

【Text Entry】window ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Save Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☝ Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template.
Save up to 1,000 templates including downloads. Delete saved templates as needed.

Download Templates

✉ ⇨ ***Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Download Templates*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Follow onscreen instructions

Create Graphic Mail from a Template

✉ ⇨ ***Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a template ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

Edit a Template

✉ ⇨ ***Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a template ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit text ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Title of a Template

✉ ⇨ ***Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a template ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

Delete Templates

✉ ⇨ ***Template*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a template ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select templates ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Receiving/Opening Messages

Start Here

【Message List】.. P. 5-6
【Message】 window............................... P. 5-7
【Mail List】 .... P. 5-7

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages

✉ ⇨ ***Retrieve New*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Received Result window opens ⇨ ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ◉

☞ Press Y! or press and hold CLEAR to cancel message retrieval.

☞ Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.

Checking Messages

Retrieve Complete S! Mail

【Message List】 ⇨ Select an S! Mail notification ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

☞ An S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the message text.

☞ Use this procedure when *Message Download* under *S! Mail Settings* is set to *Manual*.

Delete S! Mail from Server

【Message List】 ⇨ Select an S! Mail notification ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Notification***, ***Server Mail*** or ***Notifi./Server*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Read Out Messages

【Message】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Read Out Message*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Press ◉ to stop reading.

☞ Press ✉ to end reading.

Check Message Information

【Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Mail Info*** ⇨ ◉

Server Message Operations

Update Mail List

【Mail List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Mail List*** ⇨ ◉

Switch Mail List Views

【Mail List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***List Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Subject***, ***Name*** or ***Address*** ⇨ ◉

Check Server Message Information

【Mail List】 ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Mail Info*** ⇨ ◉

Forward a Server Message

【Mail List】 ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Forward*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ To ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter address ⇨ ✉

Delete Server Messages

【Mail List】 ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Check Server Memory Status

✉ ⇨ ***Server Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Server Mail Memory*** ⇨ ◉

Managing/Using Messages

Start Here

【Folder List】...P. 5-9
【Message List】...P. 5-9
【Message】window...............................P. 5-9
【Inbox Folder List】...P. 5-10
【Inbox Message List】....................................P. 5-10
【Received Message】window.............P. 5-10
【Sent Message】window.....................P. 5-10
【Tomomato-Mail Folder List】.................P. 5-11

Managing Messages

Protect a Message

【Message】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Protect ON/OFF*** ⇨ ◉

☞ If a message is protected, this procedure cancels protection.

Move Messages to a Different Folder

【Message List】 ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Move*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Move This*
  ⇨ *Move This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Move Selected*
  ⇨ *Move Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Move All*
  ⇨ *Move All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

☞ A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message window.

Delete Messages

【Folder List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

【Message List】 ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

☞ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Read Messages

【Inbox Folder List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Read*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

【Inbox Message List】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete Read*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Delivery Reports

【Inbox Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete All Reports*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.

Delete Attached Files

【Message】 window ⇨ Select attached files ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Att. File*** or ***Del All Att. Files*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USIM Operation*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Copy*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone → USIM*** or ***USIM → Phone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***SMS*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an SMS message ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USIM Operation*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USIM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***SMS*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an SMS message ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Change Message Color

【Message List】 ⇨ Select a message ⇨ Press and hold ✱

☞ Each time you press and hold ✱, the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Default (Black)

Add a Folder

【Folder List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter folder name ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Address Sort***, ***Subject Sort***, ***Reply Impossible***, ***Send Impossible*** or ***Unregistered Add.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Make auto Sort settings ⇨ ✉) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Edit a Folder Name

【Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Folder Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit folder name ⇨ ◉

☞ Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

Change Order of Folders

【Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sort Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉

☞ The order of preinstalled folders cannot be changed.

Delete a Folder

【Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted.

☞ This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder.

☞ Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

Check Number of Saved Messages

【Folder List】 / 【Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***No. of Messages*** ⇨ ◉

☞ The total number of messages, and the number of unread and protected messages in a folder can be checked from Folder List. The number of messages in a folder can be checked from Message List.

Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold ◐ or press and hold ◑ ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉

Delete All Messages in Tomomato-Mail Folder

【Tomomato-Mail Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Del All in Folder*** ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Using Messages

Edit a Sent Message

✉ ⇨ ***Outbox*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a sent message ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Edit address, subject and text ⇨ ✉

Edit & Send a Draft Message

✉ ⇨ ***Draft*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit address, subject and text ⇨ ✉

Forward a Message

【Received Message】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Reply/Forward*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Forward*** ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Enter address ⇨ ✉

☞ The subject and text can also be edited.

☞ Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

【Message】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Address List*** ⇨ Select an e-mail address/phone number ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Save Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

- To Save to Handset
  ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)
- To Save to USIM Card
  ⇨ ***USIM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***Overwrite*** or ***Add*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

Call a Phone Number in Text

【Message】 window ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Phone*** or ***Video Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dial*** ⇨ ◉

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

【Message】 window ⇨ Select an e-mail address ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨ ✉

Access the Internet from a URL in Text

【Message】 window ⇨ Select a URL ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** or ***PC Site Browser*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member List

【Message】 window ⇨ Select an e-mail address/phone number ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Save Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phonebook*** or ***Blog/Mail Member*** ⇨ ◉

- To Save to Handset
  ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)
- To Save to USIM Card
  ⇨ ***USIM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***Overwrite*** or ***Add*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)
- To Save to Blog/Mail Member List
  ⇨ Select a Blog/Mail Memer list ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉)

Search for Information by Keyword

【Message】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Quick Search*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Enter keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter keyword ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! or Browser ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item from search results ⇨ ◉

Switch Subject Field Views

【Message List】 ⇨ Press and hold #

☞ When Mail List Disp. is set to ***2 Lines***, view toggles in the order Name → Address.

☞ When ***Mail List Disp***. is set to ***1 Line***, or to ***1 Line+Body***, the view cycles as follows: Subject → Name → Address

Change Font Size of Text

【Message】 window ⇨ Press and hold ◎

Search for Messages in a Folder

【Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Search Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Search Sender***, ***Search Receiver*** or ***Search Subject*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a search criterion ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select an address, enter address or subject ⇨ ◉

☞ Narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.

☞ This procedure can be combined with *Sort* or *Filter*.

Sort Messages

【Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a criterion ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure can be combined with the *Search Mail* or *Filter*.

Filter Messages

【Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Filter*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a criterion ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure can be combined with *Search Mail* or *Sort*.

Reset Message List View to Default

【Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Display All*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure returns the message list view that has been changed by search, sort or filter operation to its original view.

Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

【Inbox Message List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Read All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Open S! Mail Delivery Report

【Outbox Message】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Disp. Report*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Only available in Message window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.

Internet

Overview 6-2

Yahoo! Keitai 6-3

Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai............................. 6-3

PC Site Browser 6-5

PC Site Browser.. 6-5

Connecting to PC Websites................................ 6-5

Page Operations 6-7

Navigating Pages.. 6-7

Open Linked Page in Multi Window.................. 6-7

Jumping to Next or Previous Page 6-7

Selecting Links and Other Items......................... 6-8

Playing Streaming Music and Video 6-8

Bookmarks & Saved Pages....................... 6-10

Using Bookmarks... 6-10

Using Saved Pages... 6-10

Advanced Features 6-12

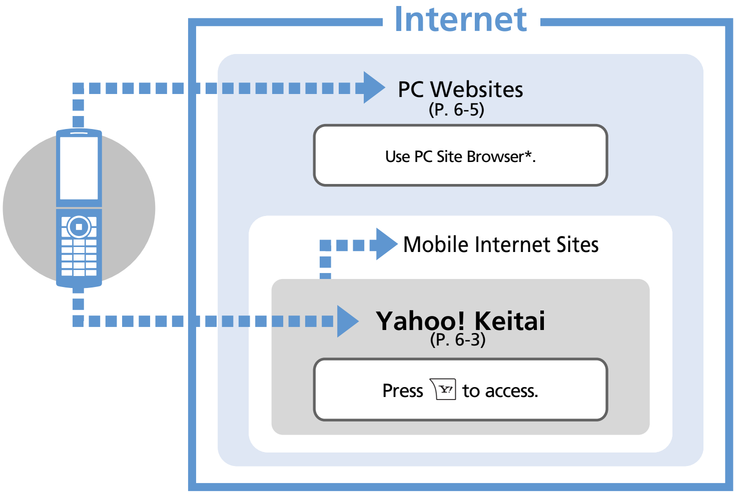
Connecting to the Internet.............................. 6-12

Page Operations... 6-13

Bookmarks & Saved Pages 6-15

Overview

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Browse PC websites using PC Site Browser.



- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocols encrypt data before transmission. Connect via SSL/TLS to safely transmit personal information, credit card numbers and internal corporate information, and guard against eavesdropping, data manipulation, impersonation and other Internet risks.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

* When ***Warning Messages*** is set to ***ON***, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.

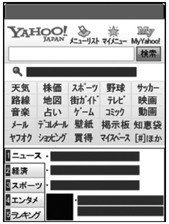
Transmission & Information Fees
Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

About Security
Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.

Yahoo! Keitai

Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1 Y!



YAHOO! JAPAN
メニューリスト
マイメニュー
MyYahoo!
検索
天気 株価 スポーツ 野球 サッカー
路線 地図 街ガイド テレビ 映画
音楽 占い ゲーム コミック 動画
メール デコメール 壁紙 掲示板 知恵袋
ヤフオク ショッピング 買得 マイスペース [#]ほか
1ニュース
2経済
3スポーツ
4エンタメ
5ランキング

Web Page

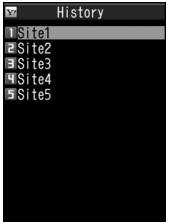
2 **Select an item ⇨ ◉**

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

3 **☎ to exit the Internet ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Using Access History

1 **Press and hold Y! ⇨ *History* ⇨ ◉**



History

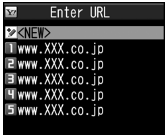
1 Site1
2 Site2
3 Site3
4 Site4
5 Site5

History List

2 **Select a record ⇨ ◉**

Entering URLs

1 **Press and hold Y! ⇨ *Enter URL* ⇨ ◉**



Enter URL

<NEW>
1 www.XXX.co.jp
2 www.XXX.co.jp
3 www.XXX.co.jp
4 www.XXX.co.jp
5 www.XXX.co.jp

URL Entry Window

2 ***<NEW>* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter URL ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *OK* ⇨ ◉**

Tip

- A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. SSL appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.

More Features

Advanced

Yahoo! Keitai
- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ **P. 6-12)**

History
- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ **P. 6-12)**

Entering URLs
- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(▶ **P. 6-12)**

Root Certificates
- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(▶ **P. 6-13)**

Customize

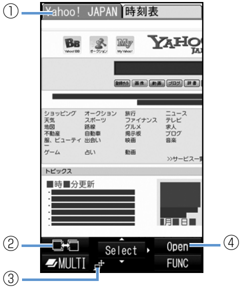
Internet
- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ **P. 14-19)**

PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



PC Site Browser Window

①	Tabs One for each title/URL appears when viewing several pages.
②	Page Toggle Appears when viewing several pages. Toggle pages with ✉.
③	Layout Display PC Screen Small Screen
④	New Window Open link in a new window.

About Page Layout

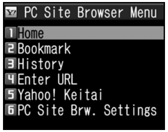
When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of PC Screen and Small Screen:

PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically. Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

Connecting to PC Websites

1 **Press and hold Y! ⇨ *PC Site Browser* ⇨ ●**



PC Site Browser Menu
1 Home
2 Bookmark
3 History
4 Enter URL
5 Yahoo! Keitai
6 PC Site Brw. Settings

PC Site Browser Menu

2 ***Home* ⇨ ● (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ●) ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ●**

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

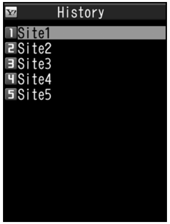
Yahoo! JAPAN

Web Page

3 **☎ to exit the Internet ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●**

Using Access History

1 **[PC Site Browser Menu] ⇨ *History* ⇨ ◉**



History

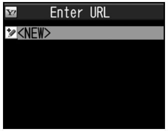
1 Site1
2 Site2
3 Site3
4 Site4
5 Site5

History List

2 **Select a record ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉)**

Entering URLs

1 **[PC Site Browser Menu] ⇨ *Enter URL* ⇨ ◉**



Enter URL

<NEW>

URL Entry Window

2 **<*NEW*> ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter URL ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *OK* ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉)**

More Features

Advanced

PC Site Browser

- Switch Page Layout Types
- Return to Home

(▶ P. 6-12)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-12)

Entering URLs

- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(▶ P. 6-12)

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 14-19)

PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers

(▶ P. 14-20)

Page Operations

Navigating Pages

Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use ✥ to scroll page.
Press ▲マナー or ▼📷 to jump between sections of the page.

Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

1 ✥ ⇨ **Select a frame**

2 ▤ ⇨ ***Frame In*** ⇨ ◉

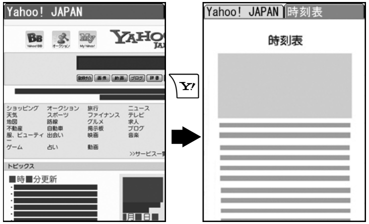
Navigate through the frame as you would a page.
To exit frames, press ▤, select ***Frame Out*** and then press ◉.

Open Linked Page in Multi Window

Open up to five pages simultaneously. Press ✉ to toggle pages.

1 **[Web Page]** ⇨ **Select a link** ⇨ Y!

The linked page appears in a new window.



Multi Window

The page toggles each time you press ✉.

Tip

- To open pages in Multi window other than linked pages:
  [Web Page] ⇨ ▤ ⇨ *Window Operation* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Open New Window* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Bookmark*, *Enter URL* (, *Yahoo! Keitai* or *Home*) ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Specify page to open ⇨ ◉
- To close opened pages:
  [Multi] window ⇨ CLEAR ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- Use CLEAR to return to previous pages stored in cache. Return through pages opened in Multi window to close.

Jumping to Next or Previous Page

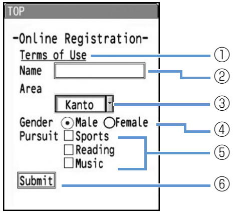
Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press ▤, select ***History Back*** or ***History Forward*** and press ◉ to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

● Network connection is made when the cache is full.

Page Operations

Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.


TOP

-Online Registration-

Terms of Use

Name

Area

Kanto

Gender ◉Male ○Female

Pursuit ☐Sports ☐Reading ☐Music

Submit

①	**Link** Select a link and press ◉ to access the linked page.
②	**Text Box** Select a text box and press ◉ to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	**Pull-down Menu** Select a pull-down menu and press ◉ to open a list of options. Use ⇳ to select an item and press ◉.
④	**Radio Button** Use ✥ and press ◉ to select only one item from a range of options. ⦿ indicates the item is selected.
⑤	**Checkbox** Use ✥ and press ◉ to select multiple items from a range of options. ☑ indicates the item is selected.
⑥	**Command Button** Select a command button and press ◉ to activate the assigned function.

Playing Streaming Music and Video

Play music and videos appearing on a page as you download (streaming).

- Downloaded data is not stored.
- See P. 9-5 for details on using Music Player.
- Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

1 **[Web Page] ⇨ Select music or video ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉)**

Once downloading starts, Music Player activates and play starts.

Note

- Packet transmission fees are incurred during streaming even if you pause play.
- Note that expensive packet transmission fees may be incurred.

More Features

Advanced

Page Operations
- Reload Page
- Save Images/Melodies in a Page
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL of a Page by Mail
- Call a Phone Number in a Page
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page
- Access Another Page from a URL in a Page
- Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book
- Search for Information by Keyword
- Change Font Size of a Page
- Zoom Page In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code of a Page
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

(▶ P. 6-13)

Customize

Internet
- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies

(▶ P. 14-19)

Yahoo! Keitai
- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

(▶ P. 14-19)

PC Site Browser
- Set Page Layout

(▶ P. 14-20)

Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

Saving URLs to Bookmark

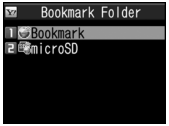
1 [Web Page] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Bookmark*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Add Bookmark*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

2 Select a folder ⇨ ◉

Accessing Pages from Bookmark

1 Press and hold Y! ▶

- ▶ **From Yahoo! Keitai**
  Bookmark ⇨ ◉
- ▶ **From PC Site Browser**
  PC Site Browser ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Bookmark*** ⇨ ◉



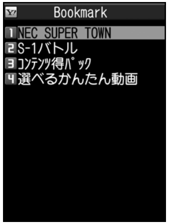
Bookmark Folder

1 Bookmark

2 microSD

Bookmark Folder List

2 Select a folder ⇨ ◉



Bookmark

1 NEC SUPER TOWN

2 S-1バトル

3 ｺﾝﾃﾝﾂ得ﾊﾟｯｸ

4 選べるかんたん動画

Bookmark List

3 Select a bookmark ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page:
  [Web Page] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Bookmark* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Bookmark List* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨ ◉

Using Saved Pages

Save an open page to Saved Pages to view the page at a later time without connecting to the Internet.

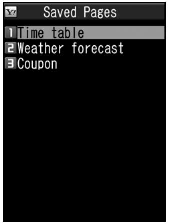
- ● Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- ● Viewable content is page as it was saved.

Saving a Page

1 [Web Page] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Saved Pages*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Add Saved Pages*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Opening Saved Pages

1 Press and hold Y! ⇨ ***Saved Pages*** ⇨ ◉



Saved Pages

1 Time table

2 Weather forecast

3 Coupon

Saved Pages List

2 **Select a page ⇨ ◉**

Tip

- To open a saved page from another page: [Web Page] ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ *Saved Pages* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Saved Pages List* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a page ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

(▶ P. 6-15)

Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

(▶ P. 6-16)

Connecting to the Internet

Start Here

【Web Page】	P. 6-3, P. 6-5
【History List】	P. 6-3, P. 6-6
【URL Entry】 window	P. 6-3, P. 6-6

Yahoo! Keitai

Switch to PC Site Browser

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Switch to PC*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ⇨ ◉

PC Site Browser

Switch Page Layout Types

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Change Disp. Mode*** ⇨ ◉

☞ The page layout toggles between PC screen and Small screen.

Return to Home

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Home*** ⇨ ◉

History

Save a URL in History to Bookmark

【History List】 ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add Bookmark*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉

Check a URL in History

【History List】 ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***URL*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Records in History

【History List】 ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select records ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Entering URLs

Access a Page from an Entered URL Record

【URL Entry】 window ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OK*** ⇨ ◉

Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record

【URL Entry】 window ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select URL entry field ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit URL ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OK*** ⇨ ◉

Send an Entered URL Record by Mail

【URL Entry】 window ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Compose Message*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter address, subject and text ⇨ ✉

☞ Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Delete Entered URL Records

【URL Entry】window ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select records ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Root Certificates

Check Certificate Details

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Connection Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Certificate*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a certificate ⇨ ◉

Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Connection Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Certificate*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a certificate ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Valid/Invalid*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

Page Operations

Start Here

【Web Page】 ....P. 6-3, P. 6-5

Reload Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Reload*** ⇨ ◉

Save Images/Melodies in a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Save File*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Object*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***Save*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉) (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

☞ To play a melody, select *Play* and press ◉.

☞ To check file properties, select *Property* and press ◉.

Save Background Image of a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Save File*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Background Image*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***Save*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉) (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

☞ To check file properties, select *Property* and press ◉.

Send URL of a Page by Mail

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Convenient Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Compose Message*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Attach URL*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter address, subject and text ⇨ ✉

☞ Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Call a Phone Number in a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Phone*** or ***Video Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dial*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ Select an e-mail address ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨ ✉

Access Another Page from a URL in a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ Select a URL ⇨ ◉

Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book

【Web Page】 ⇨ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add to Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

- To Save to Handset
  ⇨ *Phone* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)
- To Save to USIM card
  ⇨ *USIM* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉ (⇨ *Overwrite* or *Add* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉)

Search for Information by Keyword

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Quick Search*** ⇨ ◉

- To Enter a Keyword
  ⇨ *Enter Keyword* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter keyword ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! or Browser ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select an item from search results ⇨ ◉
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Entries
  ⇨ *History* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a keyword ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! or Browser ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select an item from search results ⇨ ◉

Change Font Size of a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ (⇨ ***Browser Settings*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***Change Font Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a font size ⇨ ◉

☞ Only available when the page layout type is *Small Screen* in PC Site Browser.

Zoom Page In/Out

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Zoom*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a magnification ⇨ ◉

☞ Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to *PC Screen*.

Jump to Top/End of a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Convenient Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Head of Sentence*** or ***End of Sentence*** ⇨ ◉

Change Character Code of a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Convenient Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Change CHR Code*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a character code ⇨ ◉

☞ Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

Play Flash® from the Beginning

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Convenient Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Replay*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Convenient Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Site Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Title***, ***URL*** or ***Certificate*** ⇨ ◉

Show Key Guidance

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Help*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Only available when using PC Site Browser.

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Start Here

【Bookmark Folder List】................................P. 6-10
【Bookmark List】..P. 6-10
【Saved Pages List】.....................................P. 6-10

Bookmarks

Edit a Title

【Bookmark List】 ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

Edit a URL

【Bookmark List】 ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit URL*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit URL ⇨ ◉

Send a Bookmark by Mail

【Bookmark List】 ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Compose Message*** or ***Attach to Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter address, subject and text ⇨ ✉

☞ *Compose Message*: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted at the top of the text.
Attach to Mail: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the bookmark file attached.

Check Number of Bookmarks

【Bookmark Folder List】 / 【Bookmark List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***No. of Bookmarks*** ⇨ ◉

☞ The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List.

Create a Folder

【Bookmark Folder List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Add Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter folder name ⇨ ◉

Edit a Folder Name

【Bookmark Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Folder Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit folder name ⇨ ◉

Change Order of Folders

【Bookmark Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Sort Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉

☞ The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

【Bookmark List】 ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Move*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Move This*
  ⇨ *Move This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Move Selected*
  ⇨ *Move Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select bookmarks ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Move All*
  ⇨ *Move All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Delete a Folder

【Bookmark Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.

Delete Bookmarks

■ To Delete All Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

■ To Delete Bookmarks in a Folder

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select bookmarks ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Saved Pages

Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Protect ON/OFF*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***No. of Pages*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select saved pages ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

☞ Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

Camera

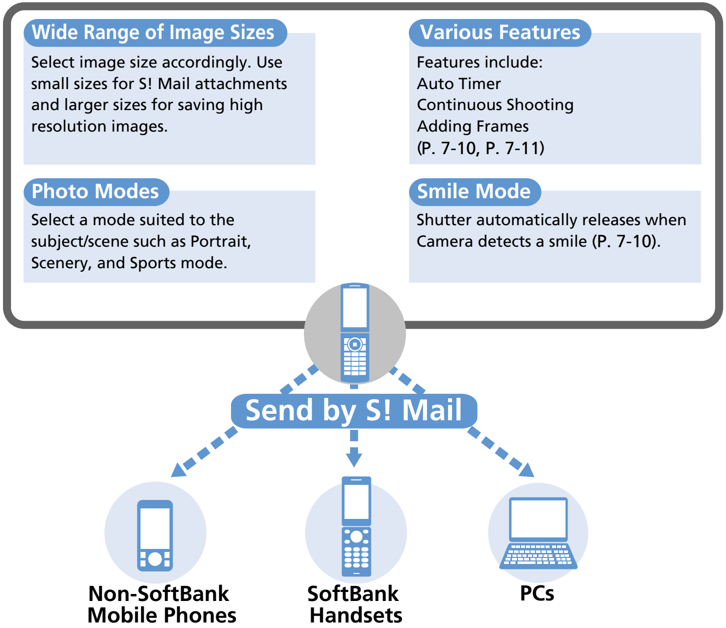
Overview **7-2**
Viewfinder Indicators.. 7-3
Switching Cameras 7-5
Capturing Still Images **7-6**
Capturing Still Images.. 7-6
Recording Videos.. **7-8**
Recording Videos 7-8
Various Features **7-10**
Using Smile Mode 7-10
Continuous Shooting 7-10
Add Frames to Images 7-11
Auto Timer... 7-11
Panoramic Shooting.. 7-11
Speed Movie 7-12
Chance Capture 7-12
Recording Only Sound 7-12
Advanced Features **7-14**
During Shooting.. 7-14
After Shooting... 7-14

7

Overview

Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

Capture Still Images/Videos



Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images.

Various Features

Features include:
Auto Timer
Continuous Shooting
Adding Frames
(P. 7-10, P. 7-11)

Photo Modes

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene such as Portrait, Scenery, and Sports mode.

Smile Mode

Shutter automatically releases when Camera detects a smile (P. 7-10).

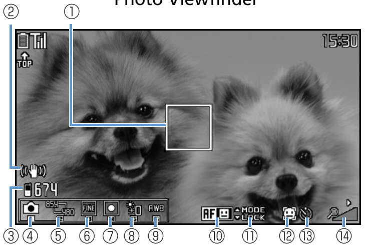
- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Handset movement during shooting may cause image blurring when Shake Correction is *OFF*. Setting Shake Correction to *Auto* is recommended.
- Although Camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.

When ***Auto-change Screen*** is set to ***ON***, turn handset on its left side while using Camera for Landscape View.

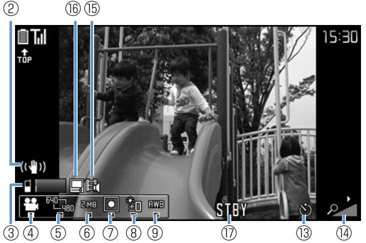
Viewfinder Indicators

Landscape View

Photo Viewfinder

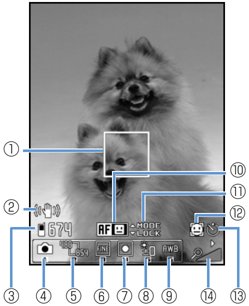

②
①
TOP
15:30
674
854
480
FINE
AWB
AF
MODE LOCK
③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑬ ⑭

Video Viewfinder

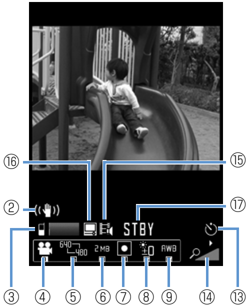

②
⑯ ⑮
TOP
15:30
640
480
2MB
AWB
STBY
③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑰ ⑬ ⑭

Portrait View

Photo Viewfinder


①
②
⑩
⑪
⑫
674
AF
MODE LOCK
480
854
FINE
AWB
③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑭ ⑬

Video Viewfinder


⑯
⑮
②
⑰
STBY
640
480
2MB
AWB
③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑭ ⑬

①	**Focus Frame (Still Images)** A white frame appears for Auto Focus. Focus Frame is green when focus is locked, and red if focusing failed.
②	**Shake Correction** Auto
③	**Storage Location (Still Image)** Handset SD Memory Card **Storage Capacity (Still Image)**[1] White number: 11 or more files Yellow number: 10 or less files Red number: No memory space
	Storage Location (Video) Handset SD Memory Card **Storage Capacity (Video)**[1] Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
④	**Camera Mode** Movie Mode SPEED Speed Movie Chance Capture Photo Mode AUTO Auto Continuous Shooting Manual Continuous Shooting Voice Mode Panorama Cap. Mode

Overview

⑤	**Image Size (Still Image/Video)** · Photo Mode/Continuous Shooting 8M (2448 × 3264) to QCIF (176 × 144) · Panorama Cap. Mode Panorama (4096 × 480 : Vertical) Panorama (2738 × 480 : Horizontal) · Movie Mode/Speed Movie[2]/Chance Capture VGA (640 × 480) to QCIF (176 × 144)
⑥	**Image Quality (Still Image)** Super Fine Fine Normal
	File Size (Video) Mail attachment[3] Up to 2 MB Long time
⑦	**Photo Mode** Auto Portrait Smile Scenery Backlight Sports Mode Night Mode Pet Food OFF
⑧	**Brightness** -2 to +2
⑨	**White Balance**[4] Auto Fine Cloudy Light bulb Fluorescent lamp

⑩	**AF Mode (Still Image)** Face ON (Face detection ＋ AF ON) AF ON Close-up AF OFF
⑪	**AF Guidance (Still Images)** For AF toggle and focus lock
⑫	**Face Select Mode (Still Image)** Face selecting mode
⑬	**Auto Timer** Auto Timer set
⑭	**Zoom (16 steps)** Minimum to Maximum
⑮	**Recording Type (Video)** Normal (Video & Sound) Video only Sound only
⑯	**Image Quality (Video)** Long time Normal Fine Super Fine
⑰	**Recording Status (Video)** STBY Recording ready ●REC Recording

1 Approximate value.

2 Switches to ***QVGA (320 × 240)*** (Landscape View) in ***Speed Movie***.

3 Available when ***Select Size*** is QCIF (176 × 144).

4 Available only when Photo Mode is set to OFF (in normal and continuous shooting modes).

Auto Save

Captured still images and videos are automatically saved to handset.

Tip

- To set so that a preview window appears after recording:
  [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ➩ ➩ ***Auto Save Set*** ➩ ◉ ➩ ***OFF*** ➩ ◉

Shake Correction

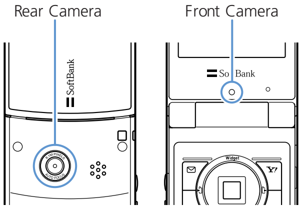
Camera is equipped with Shake Correction. This function reduces camera shake in 6 axial directions for still images and 4 axial directions for videos taken with the rear camera.

Set Shake Correction off when not needed.

Overview

Switching Cameras

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Front Camera* or *Rear Camera* ⇨ ◉**


Rear Camera
Front Camera
SoftBank
SoftBank
Widget

Rear Camera

Use for people, animals and scenery. Image appearing on Display appear as seen.

Front Camera

Use to photograph yourself. Image appearing on Display is in mirror display, but the saved image is displayed normally.

Capturing Still Images

1 MENU ⇨ ***Camera*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Photo Mode*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇨ ◉

When the focus locks, Focus Frame turns green and shutter is released.
Image is automatically saved.

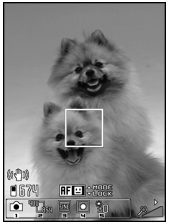


Photo Viewfinder

Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold 📷 to activate Camera in Photo Mode.

Photo Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press ◉ to save image.

Photo Preview Window

■ To Discard the Shot Image and Return to Viewfinder

⇨ CLEAR ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Attach still images to S! Mail or set as wallpaper (P. 7-15).
- Still images are stored in My Picture under Data Folder. See P. 14-23 for details on changing the storage location to Memory Card.
- Shutter clicks even if focusing fails and Focus Frame turns red.

Available Functions

AF Change	↑
AF Lock	↓
Face Select Mode[1]	Press and hold ↓ • Press ✉ or Y! and move Focus Frame to the subject. Press and hold ↓ again.
Zoom In	→
Zoom Out	←
Open Menu	✉
Toggle Camera Mode	1
Select Size	2
Quality Setting	3
Photo Mode	4
Adjust Brightness	5
White Balance[2]	6
Toggle Viewfinders[3]	9
Help	0

[1] Available when AF is set to *Face ON*.
[2] Available when *Photo Mode* is set to *OFF*.
[3] Available when *Auto-change Screen* is set to *OFF*.

More Features

Advanced

During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Set Shake Correction
- Attach Location Information During Shooting

(▶ P. 7-14)

After Shooting

- Zoom In/Out
- Upload Still Image to Blog
- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Attach Still Image to Mail and Send
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Show Shot Still Image in Standby
- Attach Location Information After Shooting

(▶ P. 7-14)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Landscape View Shooting

(▶ P. 14-23)

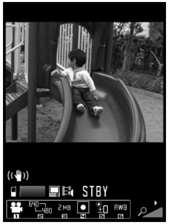
File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images

(▶ P. 14-23)

Recording Videos

1 MENU ⇨ ***Camera*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Movie Mode*** ⇨ ◉



Video Viewfinder

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇨ ◉

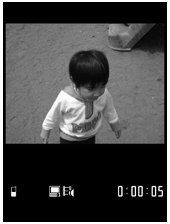
Recording starts.

3 ◉

Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Video Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press ◉ to save video.



Video Preview Window

■ To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder

⇨ CLEAR ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Video is saved to *Videos* in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-23).

Available Functions

Zoom In	◎
Zoom Out	◎
Open Menu	✉
Toggle Camera Mode	1
Select Size	2
File Size Setting	3
Photo Mode	4
Adjust Brightness	5
White Balance	6
Toggle Viewfinders*	9
Help	0

* Available when *Auto-change Screen* is set to *OFF*.

Tip

- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.

More Features

Advanced

During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Set Image Quality
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Video Type
- Set Shake Correction

(▶ P. 7-14)

After Shooting

- Upload Video to Blog
- Attach Video to Mail and Send
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video

(▶ P. 7-14)

Customize

Video Settings

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Landscape View Shooting

(▶ P. 14-23)

File Storage

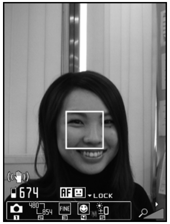
- Set Storage Location for Shot Videos

(▶ P. 14-23)

Using Smile Mode

Camera automatically detects a smile and automatically releases the shutter.

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]** ⇨ 4 ⇨ ☺ ⇨ ◉



Smile Mode Viewfinder

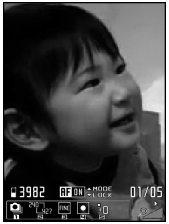
2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇨ ◉
When the person in Focus Frame smiles, the shutter is automatically released. ☺ flashes while the smile is being detected. Image is automatically saved.

Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously.
Automatic continuous shooting mode:
Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter.
Manual continuous shooting mode:
Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

- See P. 14-23 for details on setting interval/number of shots for Continuous Shooting.

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder]** ⇨ 1 ⇨ AUTO or ⇨ ◉

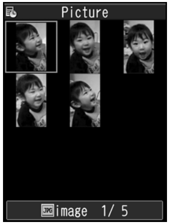


Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇨ ◉
Image is automatically saved.

Thumbnail Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*.
Press and hold ✉, *Save* or *Mirror Save* and press ◉ to save all still images.



Thumbnail Preview Window

■ To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

⇨ CLEAR ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Image size can only be set to WQVGA, QVGA V. or QCIF.

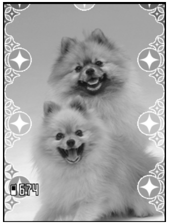
Add Frames to Images

1 **[Photo Viewfinder] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Select Frame* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a frame ⇨ ◉**

2 **Compose image in the frame ⇨ ◉**
Image is automatically saved.

Framed Image Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press ◉ to save image.



Framed Image Preview Window

■ To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder
⇨ CLEAR ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to *OFF* after shooting.

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Auto Timer* ⇨ ◉**

2 ***ON*** **⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time ⇨ ◉**

3 **Frame image in Viewfinder ⇨ ◉▶**
Auto Timer starts countdown, and Illumination flashes blue. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone sounds and Illumination flashes rapidly.
To stop Auto Timer, press ✉ or CLEAR.

▶ **For Still Images**
Images are automatically saved.

▶ **For Videos**
◉
Recording ends. Videos are automatically saved.

Tip

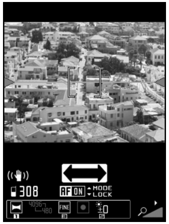
- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press ◉.

Panoramic Shooting

Create a single panorama shot automatically by moving handset horizontally while shooting.

- Letting handset move up or down during shooting may produce a shot with a reduced height or blurring.
- A moving subject may be difficult to shoot.
- Shooting may fail with a subject having a simple pattern or no pattern.

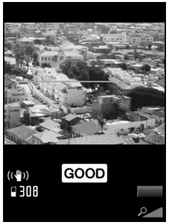
1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ 1 ⇨ ⊠ ⇨ ◉**



Panorama Cap. Window

2 **Display one end of subject ⇨ ◉**

Panorama shooting starts.



Panorama Shooting

Pan left or right as horizontally as possible so the subject does not deviate up or down from the displayed green line. Keep a good panning speed so that GOOD appears. If the speed is too fast, FAST appears and the scene cannot be captured properly.

3 **◉**

Panorama shooting ends.
Image is automatically saved.
Shooting automatically ends if the maximum storable capacity is reached.

Speed Movie

Use to check fast-moving subjects. Video is played back in slow-motion.

● Available in Landscape View.

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ 1 ⇨ SPEED ⇨ ◉**

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder ⇨ ◉**

Recording starts.

3 **◉**

Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Chance Capture

Continue recording a video until you shoot the desired scene even when the available recording time is over.

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ 1 ⇨ 🎥 ⇨ ◉**

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder ⇨ ◉**

Recording starts.
When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes.

3 **◉**

Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Note

- When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.

Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode (Voice Mode).

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ 1 ⇨ 🎤 ⇨ ◉**

2 **◉**

Recording starts.

3 **◉**

Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Tip

- To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu: MENU ⇨ *Camera* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Voice Mode* ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

After Shooting

- View Images
- Save One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as Animation
- Open an Image as Mirror Image
- Attach to Mail
- Change Frame before Saving Image

(▶ P. 7-14)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Level of Smile for Smile Mode
- Set Interval for Continuous Shooting
- Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

(▶ P. 14-23)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images

(▶ P. 14-23)

During Shooting

Start Here

【Photo Viewfinder】 .... P. 7-6
【Video Viewfinder】 .... P. 7-8

Use Camera Menu

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

Set Image Quality

【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Quality Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

Switch Color Modes

【Photo Viewfinder】/【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Camera Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Full Color***, ***Sepia*** or ***Monochrome*** ⇨ ◉

Reduce Flicker

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Camera Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Flicker*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto***, ***Mode 1 (50Hz)*** or ***Mode 2 (60Hz)*** ⇨ ◉

Check Storage Capacity

【Photo Viewfinder】/【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ◉

Change Video Type

【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Movie Type Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Normal***, ***Video*** or ***Voice*** ⇨ ◉

Set Shake Correction

【Photo Viewfinder】/【Video Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Shake Correction*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Attach Location Information During Shooting

【Photo Viewfinder】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Attach Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***From Position Loc.***, ***From Loc. History***, ***From Phonebook*** or ***From Owner Details*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Select location information ⇨ ◉)

☞ To check the attached Location Information, select *Loc. Info Detail* and press ◉.

☞ To delete the attached Location Information, select *Delete Loc. Info* and press ◉.

After Shooting

Start Here

【Photo Preview】 window .... P. 7-6
【Video Preview】 window .... P. 7-8
【Thumbnail Preview】 window .... P. 7-10
【Framed Image Preview】 window ...... P. 7-11

Zoom In/Out

【Photo Preview】 window ⇨ Y! ⇨ ✉ or Y! to zoom in or out.

☞ Press ▤ to return to original size.

Upload Still Image/Video to Blog

【Photo Preview】 window/【Video Preview】 window ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Blog Cont.*** or ***Blog Contribution*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Attach Mail***, ***QVGA Scale Down*** or ***VGA Scale Down*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Create S! Mail ⇨ ✉

☞ Specify a blog upload destination beforehand with Blog/Mail Member (P. 5-4).

☞ You may not be able to upload depending on video image size.

Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

【Photo Preview】 window ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Insert Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Insert Mail*** or ***SubQCIF Scale Down*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Create Graphic Mail ⇨ ✉

Attach Still Image/Video to Mail and Send

【Photo Preview】 window/ 【Video Preview】 window ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Attach Image*** or ***Compose Message*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Attach Mail***, ***QVGA Scale Down*** or ***VGA Scale Down*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨ ✉

☞ You may not be able to upload depending on video image size.

Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

【Photo Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Mirror Display*** ⇨ ◉

Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

【Photo Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Mirror Save*** ⇨ ◉

Show Shot Still Image in Standby

【Photo Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Set as Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Stand-by Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Check preview ⇨ ◉

Attach Location Information After Shooting

【Photo Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Attach Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***From Position Loc.***, ***From Loc. History***, ***From Phonebook*** or ***From Owner Details*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Select location information ⇨ ◉)

☞ To check the attached Location Information, select *Loc. Info Detail* and press ◉.

☞ To delete the attached Location Information, select *Delete Loc. Info* and press ◉.

Show Recorded Video in Standby

【Video Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Set as Stand-by*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Title of Video

【Video Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

View Images

【Thumbnail Preview】 window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ✉

☞ Press ◎ to switch to the previous/next image.

Save One Frame

【Thumbnail Preview】 window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! ⇨ ***Save*** or ***Mirror Save*** ⇨ ◉

Save Only Selected Images

【Thumbnail Preview】 window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Repeat the same step ⇨ Y! ⇨ ***Save*** or ***Mirror Save*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Select a checked image and press ◉ to cancel the selection.

Save as Animation

【Thumbnail Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Store All&Anime*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Save*** or ***Mirror Save*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination ⇨ ◉

Open an Image as Mirror Image

【Thumbnail Preview】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Mirror Display*** or ***Normal Display*** ⇨ ◉

Attach to Mail

【Thumbnail Preview】 window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ✉ (twice) ⇨ ***Attach Image*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Attach Mail/QVGA Scale Down*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨ ✉

Change Frame before Saving Image

【Framed Image Preview】 window ⇨ ↱ ⇨ ***Change Frame*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a frame ⇨ ◉ (twice)

TV

About TV 8-2
- Initial Setup 8-3
- TV Windows.. 8-4

Watching TV.. 8-6
- Time Shift Playback While Watching 8-7
- Data Broadcasts (Japanese) 8-7
- Program Guide 8-8

Recording/Playing Programs 8-9
- Recording Programs... 8-9
- Playing Programs.. 8-9

View/Record Timer 8-11
- Setting View Timer... 8-11
- Setting Record Timer 8-11

Advanced Features 8-13
- Channel Settings 8-13
- Watching TV 8-13
- Data Broadcasts... 8-13
- TV Link 8-14
- Recording Programs... 8-14
- Playing Programs.. 8-15
- View/Record Timer 8-15

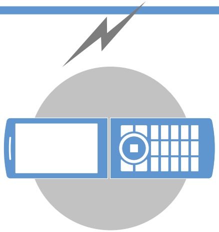
About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones.

- One Seg is available only in Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



Watch TV in Widescreen

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-7).

Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-9).

View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-11).

Quick Info

Sender and subject information appears for new message while TV is active (P. 14-5).

When *Auto-change Screen* is set to *ON*, turn handset on its left or right side while watching TV for Landscape View.

Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- TV antenna is built into handset. If screen quality is poor, change handset position or move it away from body to improve screen quality.

- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
  - Areas far from signal towers
  - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
  - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:
  The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  From PC: http://www.dpa.or.jp/
  From handset: http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Japanese)

When You First Activate TV

The first time you activate TV, the following information appears.

- How to switch between Portrait and Landscape View
- Functions unavailable in Landscape View

Read information then press ◉, select ***YES***, and press ◉. If ***NO*** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

Operating in Landscape View

Multi Selector for selecting channels or adjusting the volume is operated the same way in both Portrait and Landscape View.

Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

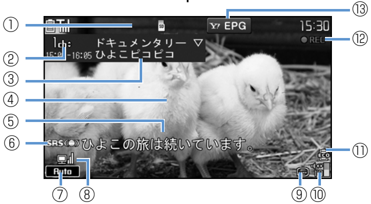
1. MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Channel Settings*** ⇨ ◉
2. ***Select Area*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select area** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select prefecture/city** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
   Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

Tip

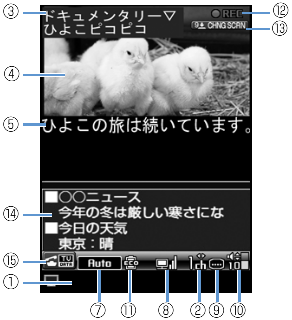
- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.

TV Windows

Landscape View


①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
⑪
⑫
⑬
EPG
15:30
REC
1ch: ドキュメンタリー ▽
15:00-16:05 ひよこピコピコ
SRS
ひよこの旅は続いています。
Auto

Portrait View


③
④
⑤
⑭
⑮
①
⑦
⑪
⑧
②
⑨
⑩
⑫
⑬
ドキュメンタリー▽
ひよこピコピコ
REC
CHNG SCRN
ひよこの旅は続いています。
■○○ニュース
今年の冬は厳しい寒さにな
■今日の天気
東京：晴
Auto
1ch
10

①	Quick Info Information about messages received while watching TV appears in tickers (P. 14-5).
②	Channel (Remote Control No.)
③	Program Title
④	Image
⑤	Subtitles
⑥	Sound Effect on (no setting required)
⑦	TV Effect OFF Sound Effects OFF CS5.1ch CS5.1ch Auto Auto Live Concert Drama Sports News Variety Movie Suitable for Each Genre Manner Manner Mode
⑧	Signal Strength Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑨	Receiving Subtitle Information Subtitles Available
⑩	Volume

⑪	TV Power Saving ECO TV Power Saving Active
⑫	Recording Status ● REC Recording REC Timer Recording Activated PAUSE (Red) Recording Paused Time Shift Status PAUSE (Green) Pause PLAY Normal Speed 1.3 1.3x Speed FF 2x Speed
⑬	Guidance Display Guidance for operation and programs appear.
⑭	Data Broadcast
⑮	TV View Mode TV DATA Image Mode TV DATA Data Broadcast Mode

More Features

Advanced

Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

(▶ P. 8-13)

Customize

Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

(▶ P. 14-21)

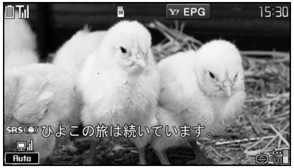
Other Settings

- Check TV Settings
- Reset Channel Settings
- Clear Data Broadcast Memory
- Reset TV Settings

(▶ P. 14-22)

Watching TV

1 MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Watch TV*** ⇨ ●



ひよこの旅は続いています。

TV Window

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

Press ✱ for channel 10, 0 for channel 11, and # for channel 12.

3 ☎ or press and hold CLEAR to end TV ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

Follow the same step to end TV in Portrait view.

Tip

- TV volume is **"0"** when Manner Mode is active and no earphone is connected. Adjust with ◎.
- Play TV audio from any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).

Available Functions

Pause or Continue[1]	●
Change Channel in Order	◎
Automatically Search for Receivable Channels	Press and hold ◎ • Press ✉ or CLEAR to stop search
Adjust Volume	◎ or press and hold ◎
	▲ﾏﾅｰ or ▼🔒
	Press and hold ▲ﾏﾅｰ or press and hold ▼🔒
Mute	CLEAR
Toggle Portrait and Landscape[2]	Press and hold 9
Show/Hide Subtitles[3]	Press and hold ✎
Toggle Windows[4]	Press and hold ✎ Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to Data Broadcast Mode[4]	✎

1 TV viewing resumes in Time Shift playback.
2 Available when ***Auto-change Screen*** is set to ***OFF***.
3 Available in Landscape View.
4 Available in Portrait View.

When a Call Arrives While Watching TV

When a call arrives or when Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while watching TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after the interrupting function ends.

Time Shift Playback While Watching

Resume watching TV even after pausing with playback.

- Time Shift playback is available when TV is paused or you receive a call.
- Time Shift playback is unavailable when *Time Shift Setup* is set to *Auto OFF*.

1 [TV] window ⇨ ◉

TV is paused.

2 When it is possible to resume watching TV ⇨ ◉

Time Shift playback starts.

Note

- Up to two minutes of playback data can be stored. Data is overwritten starting from the oldest data. If you resume viewing after pausing for more than two minutes, viewing starts from the beginning of stored data (not from where you paused).

Tip

- Other channels are unavailable while TV viewing is paused or during Time Shift playback.

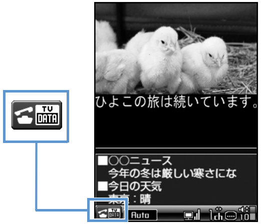
Available Functions

Start from Beginning of Stored Playback Data	◀
Change Playback Speed	▶
End	◉

Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

1 [TV] window ⇨ ✎


ひよこの旅は続いています。

■〇〇ニュース
今年の冬は厳しい寒さにな
■今日の天気
東京：晴

Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated.

2 Select a link ⇨ ◉

When a confirmation asking whether to connect to the Internet appears, select ***YES*** and press ◉. The confirmation will not appear again.

Available Functions

Select a Link	▲▼
Confirm Selection of a Link	◉
Switch Pages	◀▶
Previous Page*	CLEAR
Toggle Windows	Press and hold ✎ Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to TV Mode	✎

* Available when connected to a data broadcast website.

Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.

1 MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Program Guide*** ⇨ ◉

See Program Guide help for further operations.
Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use. Follow the onscreen instructions.

More Features

Advanced

Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

(▶P. 8-13)

Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

(▶P. 8-13)

TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

(▶P. 8-14)

Customize

Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Set Sound On While Handset Closed
- Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV
- Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV
- Set Sound Effects
- Set Visual Image Effects
- Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)

(▶P. 14-21)

Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Show Confirmation Window Again

(▶P. 14-22)

Recording/Playing Programs

Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- ● Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

1 **[TV] window ⇨ Press and hold ✉**

Recording starts.

■ To Capture a Still Image

⇨ ✉

Captured still images are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

2 ✉

Recording ends.

■ When Memory Becomes Full

Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

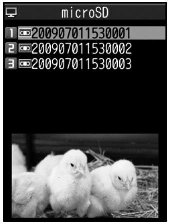
Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When ☒ appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

Playing Programs

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***Video*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***microSD*** ⇨ ◉



microSD

1 200907011530001

2 200907011530002

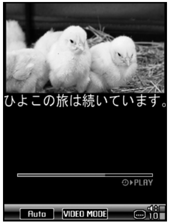
3 200907011530003

Recorded Program List

■ To View Captured Still Images

⇨ ***Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉

3 **Select a file ⇨ ◉**



ひよこの旅は続いています。

Recorded Program Playback Window

■ To Stop Playback

⇨ CLEAR

Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select *YES* and press ◉.

Recording/Playing Programs

Available Keys during Program Playback

Pause/Play	◉
Adjust Volume	↕ or press and hold ↕
	▲マナー or ▼📷
Mute	Y!
Fast Play[1]	▶
Frame Forward	▶ during pause
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds[2]	Press and hold ▶
Skip Back 30 Seconds[2]	Press and hold ◀
Toggle Sound Effects	✉
Toggle Portrait and Landscape View[3]	Press and hold 9
Show/Hide Subtitles	Press and hold ✎

1 Toggle normal and fast play.

2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.

3 Available when *Auto-change Screen* is set to *OFF*.

More Features

Advanced

Recording Programs
- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

(▶ P. 8-14)

Playing Programs
- Specify Point to Start Playback

(▶ P. 8-15)

Customize

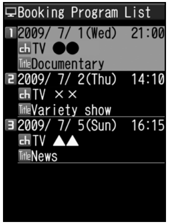
Recording Programs
- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

(▶ P. 14-22)

View/Record Timer

Setting View Timer

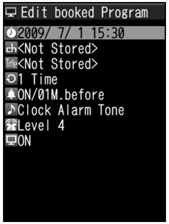
1 MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Booking Program List*** ⇨ ◉



Booking Program List
1 2009/ 7/ 1(Wed) 21:00
ch TV ●●
Title Documentary
2 2009/ 7/ 2(Thu) 14:10
ch TV ××
Title Variety show
3 2009/ 7/ 5(Sun) 16:15
ch TV ▲▲
Title News

Booking Program List

2 ⇨ ***New*** ⇨ ◉



Edit booked Program
2009/ 7/ 1 15:30
ch <Not Stored>
Title <Not Stored>
1 Time
ON/01M.before
Clock Alarm Tone
Level 4
ON

View Timer Setting Window

3 ⏱ ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**
Enter Date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter date and time ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Select a Date from Calendar**
Choose Date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time ⇨ ◉

4 ch ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a channel** ⇨ ◉

5 🔔 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON, ON/Set Time*** **or** ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ **(** ⇨ **Select a time** ⇨ ◉**)**

6 ✉

Note

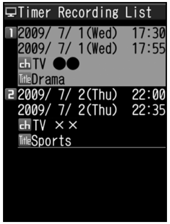
- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

When the Set Time Comes

The alarm sounds for about five minutes, and the start date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display. Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Setting Record Timer

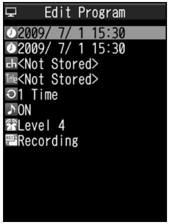
1 MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Timer Recording List*** ⇨ ◉



Timer Recording List
1 2009/ 7/ 1(Wed) 17:30
2009/ 7/ 1(Wed) 17:55
ch TV ●●
Title Drama
2 2009/ 7/ 2(Thu) 22:00
2009/ 7/ 2(Thu) 22:35
ch TV ××
Title Sports

Timer Recording List

2 ⇨ ***New*** ⇨ ◉



Edit Program
2009/ 7/ 1 15:30
2009/ 7/ 1 15:30
ch <Not Stored>
Title <Not Stored>
1 Time
ON
Level 4
Recording

Record Timer Setting Window

3 ⏱ ⇨ ◉▶

Enter date and time to start/end recording.

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

Enter Date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter date and time to start and end recording ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Select a Date from Calendar**

Choose Date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time ⇨ ◉

4 ch ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a channel** ⇨ ◉

5 ♪ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** **or** ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

6 ✉ **(**⇨ ***YES*** **or** ***YES (Confirm Once)*** ⇨ ◉**)**

Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

When the Set Time Comes

One minute before the recording start time, the alarm sounds for about two seconds. After the start date and time, end date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display, TV activates. Then, recording starts at the set start time.

More Features

Advanced

View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

(▶ P. 8-15)

Channel Settings

Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Channel Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Automatic*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter title ⇨ ◉

☞ When a Remote Control Number applies to two or more channels, select an area manually.

Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Channel List*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Not Stored*** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Channel Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Area*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select area ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select prefecture/city ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Switch Channel Lists

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Channel List*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a channel list ⇨ ◉

Watching TV

Start Here

【TV】window..P. 8-6

Show Program Information

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Program Info*** ⇨ ◉

Adjust Brightness

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Brightness*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a level ⇨ ◉

Switch Main & Sub Audio

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Main/Sub Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an audio output option ⇨ ◉

Switch Audio Channels

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Sound Switch*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an audio channel ⇨ ◉

☞ ***Sound Switch*** is available when there is more than one audio channel.

Show Current Channel List Information

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Channel*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Channel Info*** ⇨ ◉

Add Current Station to Channel List

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Channel*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Add Channel*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ This function is useful when you find new stations via auto-search (press and hold ◎).

Select a Program

【TV】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Channel*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Tune Service*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a service (program) ⇨ ◉

☞ ***Tune Service*** is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

Data Broadcasts

Start Here

【Data Broadcast Mode】window ....P. 8-7

Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

【Data Broadcast Mode】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Data Broadcast*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reload Contents*** ⇨ ◉

Check Certificate for SSL Page

【Data Broadcast Mode】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Data Broadcast*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Show Certificate*** ⇨ ◉

Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

【Data Broadcast Mode】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Data Broadcast*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Back to Data BC*** ⇨ ◉

TV Link

Start Here

【Data Broadcast Mode】 window .... P. 8-7

Save TV Links

【Data Broadcast Mode】 window ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***YES (By default)*** ⇨ ◉)

☞ Some TV links may have expiration dates.

Access Pages/Information from TV Links

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***TV Link*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:
- 🖥 Memo information
- 🖥 Data broadcast site
- 🖥 Internet content

Show Details of a TV Link

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***TV Link*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a TV link ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Display Detail*** ⇨ ◉

Show Number of Saved TV Links

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***TV Link*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***No. of TV Link*** ⇨ ◉

Delete TV Links

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***TV Link*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a TV link ⇨ ▤

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a TV link ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Repeat step of selecting TV link ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Recording Programs

Start Here

【Recorded Program List】 .... P. 8-9

Edit Title of a Recorded Program

【Recorded Program List】 ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

Reset Title of a Recorded Program

【Recorded Program List】 ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Initialize Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Switch Views of Recorded Program List

【Recorded Program List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Switch List*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Title*** or ***Title + Image*** ⇨ ◉

Check Information on a Recorded Program

【Recorded Program List】 ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Show Info*** ⇨ ◉

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

【Recorded Program List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Check Memory*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Recorded Programs

【Recorded Program List】 ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ▤

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Multiple-choice*
  ⇨ *Multiple-choice* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ▤ ⇨ *Delete* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Playing Programs

Start Here

【Recorded Program Playback】 window .... P. 8-9

Specify Point to Start Playback

【Recorded Program Playback】 window ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ⊙ to specify point ⇨ ◉

View/Record Timer

Start Here

【Booking Program List】 .... P. 8-11
【View Timer Setting】 window .... P. 8-11
【Timer Recording List】 .... P. 8-11
【Record Timer Setting】 window .... P. 8-11

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

【View Timer Setting】 window ⇨ ♪ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a sub folder ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select an alarm tone ⇨ ◉

Enter Title of Booked Program

【View Timer Setting】 window / 【Record Timer Setting】 window ⇨ Title ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter program title ⇨ ◉

Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

【View Timer Setting】 window / 【Record Timer Setting】 window ⇨ ↻ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***1 Time***, ***Daily*** or ***Select Day*** ⇨ ◉

☞ When *Select Day* is specified, select days of the week and press ✉.

Set Timer Alarm Volume

【View Timer Setting】 window / 【Record Timer Setting】 window ⇨ ⏰ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ⊙ to adjust volume ⇨ ◉

Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

【View Timer Setting】 window ⇨ 🖥 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

☞ When *ON* is set, press ◉ twice, select *YES* and press ◉ from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

【Record Timer Setting】 window ⇨ REC ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Recording*** or ***Operation Preferred*** ⇨ ◉

☞ When *Recording* is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When *Operation Preferred* is set, a confirmation asking to start recording appears.

Edit View/Record Timer Settings

【Booking Program List】 / 【Timer Recording List】 ⇨ Select a booked program ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉

8 TV

Change Order of Booked Programs

【Booking Program List】/【Timer Recording List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a criterion ⇨ ◉

Delete Booked Programs

【Booking Program List】/【Timer Recording List】 ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select programs ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Repeat step of selecting programs ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

☞ Select *Delete past* to delete old bookings.

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

【Timer Recording List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ◉

Check Result of Timer Recording

MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Result Timer Rec*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉

☞ Press ◉ to play the recorded program.

Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player 9-2
  Playback Windows 9-3
  Downloading Music 9-4
Music Playback.. 9-5
  Playing Music... 9-5
  Using Playlists 9-6
S! Appli.. 9-8
  About S! Appli.. 9-8
  Downloading S! Appli....................................... 9-8
  Activating S! Appli 9-8
Advanced Features 9-10
  Music Player.. 9-10
  S! Appli 9-12

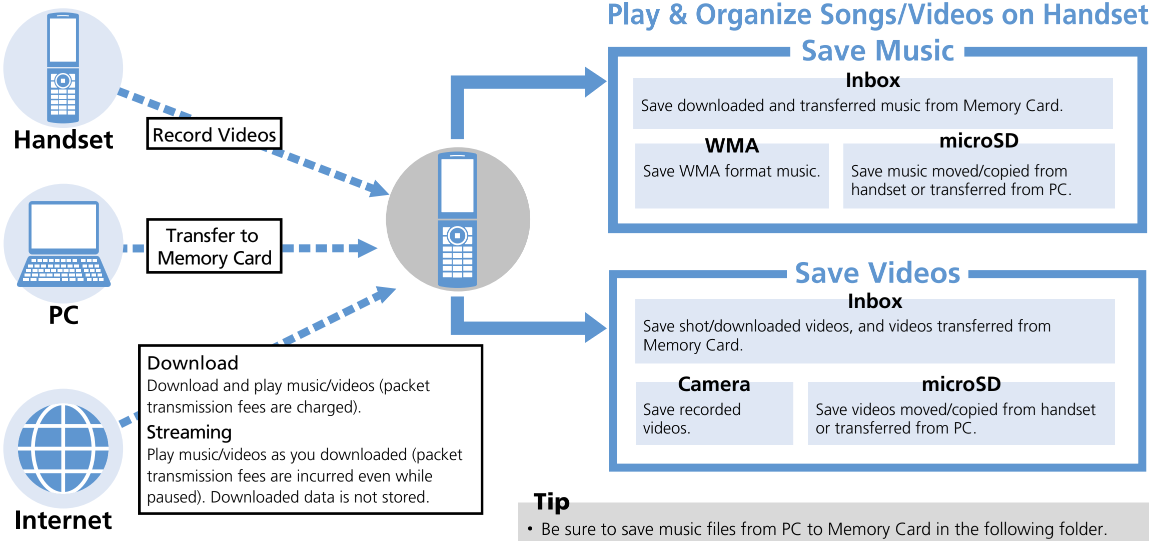
9

About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Also play videos with Music Player. When ***Auto-change Screen*** is set to ***ON***, turn handset to its left side to view in full screen mode.
- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.
- Fully charge battery beforehand. Play unavailable on low charge, even when ▯Music is pressed and held with handset closed.
- Alarm notification, received calls, etc. while playing music will pause play. For videos, select the same video to resume watching.

Play & Organize Songs/Videos on Handset



Handset

Record Videos

PC

Transfer to Memory Card

Internet

Download

Download and play music/videos (packet transmission fees are charged).

Streaming

Play music/videos as you downloaded (packet transmission fees are incurred even while paused). Downloaded data is not stored.

Save Music

Inbox

Save downloaded and transferred music from Memory Card.

WMA

Save WMA format music.

microSD

Save music moved/copied from handset or transferred from PC.

Save Videos

Inbox

Save shot/downloaded videos, and videos transferred from Memory Card.

Camera

Save recorded videos.

microSD

Save videos moved/copied from handset or transferred from PC.

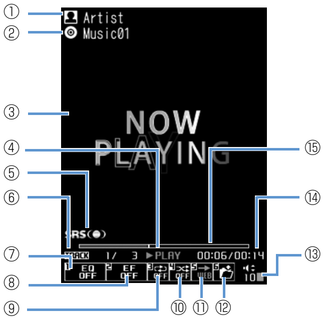
Tip

- Be sure to save music files from PC to Memory Card in the following folder.
  ￥PRIVATE￥MYFOLDER￥My Items￥Music

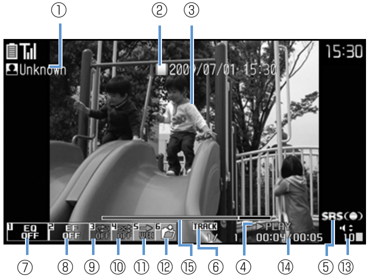
About Music Player

Playback Windows

Normal Screen Mode


①
②
Artist
Music01
③
NOW PLAYING
④
⑤
⑥
⑮
⑭
SRS(●)
TRACK 1/ 3 ▶PLAY 00:06/00:14
⑦
EQ OFF
EF OFF
WEB
10
⑬
⑧
⑨
⑩ ⑪ ⑫

Full Screen Mode
(For Video Playback)


① ② ③
Unknown
2009/07/01 15:30
15:30
SRS(●)
EQ OFF
EF OFF
WEB
TRACK 1/ 1
PLAY
00:04/00:05
10
⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑮ ⑥ ④ ⑭ ⑤ ⑬

①	Artist Name <Creator>[1]
②	Title
③	Playback Image <Video>[1]
④	Playback Status ▷PLAY Play ‖PAUSE Pause ▷▷FF Fast Forward ◁◁REW Rewind ▷SLOW Slow Play[2] ◫PLAY Fast Play[2]
⑤	Sound Effect on (always on)
⑥	Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder)
⑦	Equalizer EQ OFF OFF Pop Live Vocal Break C.Light Woofe Ballad Rap Concert Rock Kiss Loud For each genre of music EQ User1 EQ User2 EQ User3 User settings
⑧	Sound Effect EF OFF OFF TruMedia CS5.1ch Bassmania Attractive Voice Clearblue Sky Beat Wave IceAge Extreme Reality LiveHall For different song styles EF User1 EF User2 EF User3 User settings
⑨	Repeat Mode 🔁OFF OFF 🔁 Repeat All 🔂 Repeat One
⑩	Shuffle Mode 🔀 ON 🔀OFF OFF

⑪	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑫	Song/file Selection
⑬	Volume
⑭	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑮	Playback Position ▮ indicates the current playback position. Use ◎ to move playback position during pause.

1 Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.

2 Only available when playing videos.

Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Music*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Select from a Genre and Download**

Download Music ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Search for Music and Download**

Search Music ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Follow onscreen instructions**

Transferring from PC

- Convert music CD data to WMA format and store to memory card using Windows Media® Player.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***External Connection*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USB Mode Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***MTP Mode*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Connect handset to your PC with a USB cable**

Music can now be transferred by operation from your PC. See the Help for “Windows Media® Player“ for details.

3 **Transfer WMA data from your PC to memory card**

4 **Once transferred, remove USB cable from your PC and handset**

Remove from PC according to method for the OS.

Note

- Windows® XP supports Windows Media® Player 10/11. With Windows Vista®, use Windows Media® Player 11.

Tip

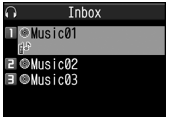
- After transferring WMA data, return *USB Mode Setting* to *Communication Mode*.

Music Playback

Playing Music

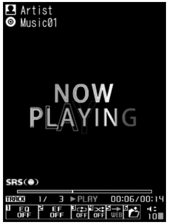
1 MENU ⇨ ***Music*** ⇨ ●

2 **Select a folder** ⇨ ●



Song List

3 **Select a song** ⇨ ●



Music Player Playback Window
(Video Player Playback Window)

Tip

- Alternatively, in Standby, press and hold ▯Music to start Music Player. Play resumes from where it was paused last.
- Use any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
  MENU ⇨ *Data Folder* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Videos* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Specify a video to play
- When video is about to be played the first time with *Auto-change Screen* set to *OFF*, a confirmation appears asking whether to play video in Full Screen Mode all the time. Select *YES* or *NO* and press ●. Confirmation no longer appears.

Available Keys during Playback

While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	● or ▯Music
Adjust Volume	◎ or press and hold ◎ ▯マナー or ▯🔒
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	◎ or press and hold ▯マナー
Play Next Song/Video	◎ or press and hold ▯🔒
Rewind	Press and hold ◎
Fast Forward	Press and hold ◎
Move Playback Position	◎ during pause
Open/Close Menu	✉
Select a Song/File	Y! or 6
Set Equalizer[1]	1
Set Sound Effect[1]	2
Set Repeat Mode[1]	3
Set Shuffle Mode[1]	4
Access the Internet	5
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen[2] [3] [4]	9
Toggle Jacket Image	# or ＊ When there are several jacket images.
End Playback	CLEAR

[1] The setting toggles each time you press the key.
[2] Unavailable during streaming.
[3] Available when playing videos.
[4] Available when *Auto-change Screen* is set to *OFF*.

Music Playback

While Handset is Closed

Adjust Volume	▯ﾏﾅｰ or ▯🔒
Playing from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	Press and hold ▯ﾏﾅｰ
Play Next Song/Video	Press and hold ▯🔒

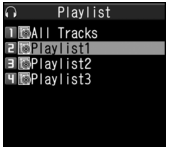
Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

Creating a Playlist

1 MENU ⇨ ***Music*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Playlist*** ⇨ ◉


Playlist
1 All Tracks
2 Playlist1
3 Playlist2
4 Playlist3

Playlist Window

2 ▯ ⇨ ***Create Playlist*** ⇨ ◉

3 Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a song ⇨ ◉

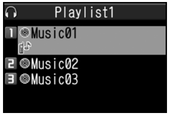
Repeat this step to specify other songs.

4 When all songs are specified ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter playlist name ⇨ ◉

Playing a Playlist

1 [Playlist] window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ◉

To play a playlist from the beginning, select a playlist and press ✉.


Playlist1
1 Music01
2 Music02
3 Music03

Playlist Song List

2 Select a song ⇨ ◉

Songs play back in the listed order.

Tip

- To play all songs, select *All Tracks* in Playlist window and press ◉ (twice).

More Features

Advanced

Playing Music

- Resume Playback
- Use Menu
- File Information
- Repeat
- Set Preferred Sound Quality
- Set Preferred Sound Effect
- Specify Play Start Position
- Change Video Playback Speed
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music
- Open Lyrics
- Open Jacket Image
- Check Operation Methods

(▶ P. 9-10)

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music
- Delete All Music in WMA Folder

(▶ P. 9-11)

Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

(▶ P. 9-11)

Customize

Playback Window

- Change Design of Playback Window
- Set Image Display Size

(▶ P. 14-24)

S! Appli

About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible S! Appli "Lifestyle-Appli" (P. 11-3). Change Lifestyle-Appli settings as any other S! Appli.

About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network (Internet) connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

1 MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Information*** ⇨ ◉

Downloading S! Appli

1 MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Appli List*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Download S! App*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Select an S! Appli ⇨ ◉ (twice)▶**

▶ **To Activate S! Appli Right Away**

YES ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Activate S! Appli Later**

NO ⇨ ◉

Note

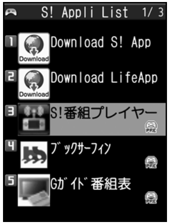
- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable.
  You will need to download it again.
- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
  – Download the same S! Appli with no Memory Card inserted
  – Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted
  Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.

Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 11-2.
- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.

Activating S! Appli

1 MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Appli List*** ⇨ ◉



S! Appli List

2 **Select an application ⇨ ◉**

Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. S! Appli resumes when the call ends.
- To end S! Appli:
  While running, ☎ ⇨ *End* ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

S! Appli
- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- Delete an S! Appli

(▶ P. 9-12)

Customize

When Running S! Appli
- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

(▶ P. 14-24)

S! Appli
- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

(▶ P. 14-24)

Music Player

Start Here

【Music Player Playback】window.......... P. 9-5
【Video Player Playback】window.......... P. 9-5
【Song List】... P. 9-5
【Playlist】window.................................. P. 9-6
【Playlist Song List】..................................... P. 9-6

Playing Music

Resume Playback

MENU ⇨ ***Music*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Resume Play*** ⇨ ◉

Use Menu

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉*

*Press to toggle.

File Information

【Music Player Playback】window / 【Video Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Detail Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***File Property*** or ***Video Info*** ⇨ ◉

Repeat

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Action Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Repeat Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***All Repeat*** or ***Single Repeat*** ⇨ ◉

Set Preferred Sound Quality

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Action Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Sound Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Equalizer*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Set level for each wavelength ⇨ ◉

- To return sound quality to initial state
  ⇨ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇨ ✉ (twice) ⇨ ◉

Set Preferred Sound Effect

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Action Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Sound Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Set level for each effect ⇨ ◉

- To set by existing effects
  ⇨ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Y! ⇨ Select effect ⇨ ◉
- To return sound effect to initial state
  ⇨ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇨ ✉ (twice) ⇨ ◉

Specify Play Start Position

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Play Menu*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Position to Play*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Specify play start position with ◎ ⇨ ◉

Change Video Playback Speed

【Video Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Play Menu*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Fast*** or ***Slow*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Press ✉ to return to normal speed.

Use a Different Function While Playing Music

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ⊟ ⇨ ***Switch to BGM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Activate another function

☞ Press and hold ▯Music during BGM playback to end Music Player.

Open Lyrics

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Detail Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Lyric*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Use ◎ to toggle between lyrics.

Open Jacket Image

【Music Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Detail Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Jacket Image*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Use ⊕ to toggle jacket images.

Check Operation Methods

【Video Player Playback】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Help*** ⇨ ◉

Organizing Songs

Set a Song as Ringtone

【Song List】 ⇨ Select a song ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Select Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ⊕ to specify play start position ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select ringtone item ⇨ ◉

Search for Songs

【Song List】, 【Playlist】window or 【Playlist Song List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Search*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter condtion ⇨ ◉

☞ Select a song from search results and press ◉ to play it.

Change Order of Songs

【Song List】 / 【Playlist Song List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a criterion ⇨ ◉

Check Volume of Saved Music

【Song List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ◉

Delete All Music in WMA Folder

MENU ⇨ ***Music*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***WMA*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Playlists

Add Songs to Playlist

【Playlist Song List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Playlist*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Add Music*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select songs ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ The songs you specified are added at the end of the playlist.

Change Order of Playlist Songs

【Playlist Song List】 ⇨ Select a song ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Playlist*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Sort Playlist*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉

Cancel Playlist Songs

【Playlist Song List】 ⇨ Select a song ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Playlist*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Release Settings*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Release This*
  ⇨ ***Release This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Release Selected*
  ⇨ ***Release Selected*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select songs ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Release All*
  ⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Edit a Playlist Name

【Playlist】window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Playlist Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit playlist name ⇨ ◉

Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

【Playlist】window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Update All Tracks*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Copy a Playlist

【Playlist】window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Copy to Playlist*** ⇨ ◉

Check Playlist Information

【Playlist】 window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ▣
⇨ ***Playlist Info*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Playlists

【Playlist】 window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ▣
⇨ ***Delete Playlist*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  ⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select playlists
  ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

S! Appli

Start Here

【S! Appli List】 .... P. 9-8

Check S! Appli Information

【S! Appli List】 ⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ▣
⇨ ***Properties*** ⇨ ◉

Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

【S! Appli List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ◉

Delete an S! Appli

【S! Appli List】 ⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ▣
⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Entertainment

10

Mobile Widget 10-2
About Mobile Widget 10-2
Using Mobile Widget (Japanese) 10-2
Downloading Widgets 10-2
Adding Widgets 10-3
S! Quick News 10-4
Using S! Quick News (Japanese)........................ 10-4
S! Info Channel 10-5
Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)...................... 10-5
Books 10-7
Obtaining Books... 10-7
Using BookSurfing® 10-7
Advanced Features 10-8
Mobile Widget 10-8
S! Quick News.. 10-8
S! Info Channel.. 10-8
Weather Indicators... 10-9

About Mobile Widget

Download widgets to access the latest information or use various tools.
Access widgets from Standby by pressing ◎.

- Add up to five widgets per Desktop page. Select from four Desktop pages.
- In addition to preinstalled widgets, download widgets as needed.
- Screenshots are for illustrative purposes and may differ in appearance from actual widgets.

Network Widgets

Some widgets require network connection. Transmission fees incur when using such widgets. Follow onscreen instructions when connecting.

- Packet transmission fees apply for downloading widgets.

Tip

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information for details on transmission fees.

Checking Overview of Mobile Widget

1 MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Mobile Widget*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Information*** ⇨ ◉

Using Mobile Widget (Japanese)

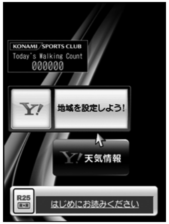
Open Desktop page and use widgets.
In Standby, press ▭ to show or hide widgets.

Note

- Handset may briefly connect to network after you press ▭. Packet transmission fees apply.

1 ◎

Use pointer to select widgets.

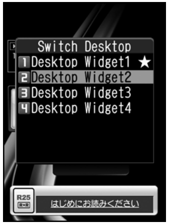

KONAMI SPORTS CLUB
Today's Walking Count
000000
Y!
地域を設定しよう!
Y! 天気情報
R25
はじめにお読みください

Active Desktop Page

2 ✣ ⇨ **Select a widget** ⇨ ◉

Select Desktop Page

1 **[Active Desktop Page]** ⇨ Y!


Switch Desktop
1 Desktop Widget1 ★
2 Desktop Widget2
3 Desktop Widget3
4 Desktop Widget4
R25
はじめにお読みください

A ★ appears next to the selected Desktop page.

2 **Select a Desktop page** ⇨ ◉

Downloading Widgets

Download and add to Desktop page.

- Store up to 100 widgets.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Mobile Widget*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Widget Contents*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Download Widget*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Select widgets to download** ⇨ ◉ **(twice)**

Installation is complete.

3 ***Paste on Desktop*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a Desktop page** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Move into position** ⇨ ◉

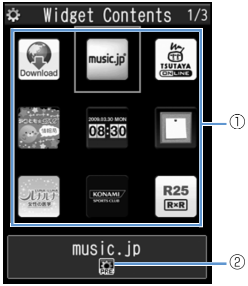
■ **To Activate Immediately**
⇨ ***Open*** ⇨◉

■ **To Check Information**
⇨ ***Property*** ⇨◉

■ **To Open List**
⇨ ***Widget Contents*** ⇨◉

■ **To Return to Previous Window**
⇨ ***Back*** ⇨◉

Widget List Icons & Indicators



Widget List

①	Contents Icon	
	Download	Access Download Widget.
	⚙	Appears when no icon set to widgets.
	⚙	Uninstalled widgets. Select to start installation.
②	Data Information	
	PRE	Preinstalled widgets
	DL	Downloaded widgets
	SET	Added to Desktop Page
	✉	Sendable by mail
	Ir	Infrared transmittable
	SD	Transferable to Memory Card

Adding Widgets

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Widget*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Select widgets to add** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Paste on Desktop*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a Desktop page** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Move into position** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Add up to five widgets in each Desktop page.

More Features

Advanced

Mobile Widget
- Change Position of widgets
- Delete from Desktop Page
- Place widgets in Foreground or Background
- Update Display

(▶ P. 10-8)

Customize

Mobile Widget
- Check Auto Synchronize Settings
- Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad
- Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page
- Set Whether to Use Cookies
- Delete Cookies
- Set Whether to Use Mobile Widget

(▶ P. 14-25)

S! Quick News

Using S! Quick News (Japanese)

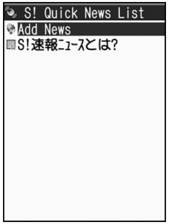
Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Quick News.

Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

1 Press and hold ◎



S! Quick News List
Add News
S!速報ﾆｭｰｽとは?

S! Quick News List

2 *Add News* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

3 Select an item ⇨ ◉

Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Updated Information

1 [S! Quick News List] ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

2 Select information ⇨ ◉

To check next updated information, press Y!.

More Features

Advanced

S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

(▶ P. 10-8)

Customize

S! Quick News

- Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Information to appear in S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News Images
- Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

(▶ P. 14-25)

S! Info Channel

Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)

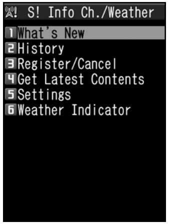
This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather and other information.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Info Channel/Weather Indicators.

Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Info Ch./Weather*** ⇨ ◉


S! Info Ch./Weather
1 What's New
2 History
3 Register/Cancel
4 Get Latest Contents
5 Settings
6 Weather Indicator

S! Info Channel Menu

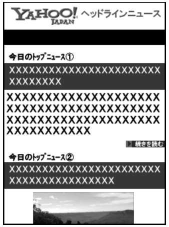
2 ***Register/Cancel*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Continue by following onscreen directions to subscribe.

Checking Latest Information

A Desktop Icon notifies you when new information is received.

1 ◉ ⇨ **Desktop Icons** 📡 ⇨ ◉


YAHOO! JAPAN ヘッドラインニュース
今日のﾄｯﾌﾟﾆｭｰｽ①
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXX
続きを読む
今日のﾄｯﾌﾟﾆｭｰｽ②
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Web Page

Continue by following onscreen directions. Web page operation is the same as for Yahoo! Keitai.

Tip

- To check from a menu:
  [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇨ *What's New* ⇨ ◉
- To check previous information:
  [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇨ *History* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Unread or read backnumbers are indicated with 📡 or 📡.

Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

Weather Indicators

☀	Clear (Daytime)	▷	Later
☾	Clear (Night)	/	Partial
☁	Cloudy	🌲	Pollen (Low)
☂	Rain	🌲	Pollen (High)
⚡	Thunder	☀	UV Rays (Low)
☃	Snow	☀	UV Rays (High)

<Example> Cloudy, partial rain ☁ / ☂

- For a complete list of indicators, see Appendix (P. 15-18).

Checking Weather Report

1 **[S! Info Channel Menu]** ⇨ ***Weather Indicator*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Weather*** ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

S! Info Channel

- Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

(▶ P. 10-8)

Weather Indicators

- Manually Update Weather Information

(▶ P. 10-9)

Customize

S! Info Channel

- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information
- Set Font Size for Web Pages

(▶ P. 14-26)

Weather Indicators

- Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

(▶ P. 14-26)

Books

Download e-comics, e-photo albums and other CCF file books.

Obtaining Books

Download books from the Internet.

- Downloaded books are stored in Books in Data Folder.
- Some books require you to obtain a contents key (right to use contents).

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Books*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Download Books*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Continue by following onscreen directions to download.

Tip

- Downloads from BookSurfing® are also available.

Using BookSurfing®

View e-comics, e-photo albums, etc. (CCF file).

1 MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***BookSurfing*** ⇨ ◉

BookSurfing® is activated.

See the Help for BookSurfing® for operation.

Tip

- Alternatively, activate BookSurfing® by selecting *BookSurfing* from the S! Appli list.

Mobile Widget

Start Here

【Active Desktop Page】 .... P. 10-2

Change Position of widgets

【Active Desktop Page】 ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Change Layout*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Move into position ⇨ ◉

Delete from Desktop Page

【Active Desktop Page】 ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Content*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Place widgets in Foreground or Background

【Active Desktop Page】 ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***To front*** or ***To back*** ⇨ ◉

Update Display

【Active Desktop Page】 ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Renew Display*** ⇨ ◉

S! Quick News

Start Here

【S! Quick News List】 .... P. 10-4

Manually Update List

【S! Quick News List】 ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Refresh This*** or ***Refresh All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

View Descriptions of Registered News

【S! Quick News List】 ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Outline*** ⇨ ◉

Delete Registered News/Items

【S! Quick News List】 ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ (twice)

S! Info Channel

Start Here

【S! Info Channel Menu】 .... P. 10-5
【Web Page】 .... P. 10-5

Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

【S! Info Channel Menu】 ⇨ ***Get Latest Contents*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

【Web Page】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Save File*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***Save*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉) (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉)

☞ Select *Play* and press ◉ to play melody file.
☞ Select *Property* and press ◉ to check file information.

Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add to Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

- To Save to Handset
  ⇨ *Phone* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)
- To Save to USIM Card
  ⇨ *USIM* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉)

Weather Indicators

Start Here

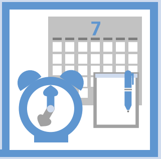
[S! Info Channel Menu]..........................P. 10-5

Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇨ ***Weather Indicator*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Manual Update*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Entertainment
10

Tools



Osaifu-Keitai® 11-2
- About Osaifu-Keitai® 11-2
- Using Osaifu-Keitai® 11-3
- Activating IC Card Lock 11-3

S! GPS Navi 11-5
- About S! GPS Navi 11-5
- Activating a Navi Appli 11-5
- Checking Current Location 11-5

Life History Viewer 11-7
- Life History Viewer Window 11-7
- Viewing Data in Chronological Order 11-7

Schedule 11-9
- Schedule Window 11-9
- Saving Events to Schedule 11-9
- Checking Saved Events 11-10
- Deleting Events 11-11

To Do List 11-12
- Saving Tasks 11-12
- Checking Saved Tasks 11-12
- Deleting Tasks 11-13

Text Memo 11-14
- Saving Text Memos 11-14
- Deleting Text Memos 11-14

Voice Memo 11-15
- Recording Your Voice 11-15

Calculator 11-16

Alarm 11-17
- Setting Alarm 11-17
- Canceling Alarm 11-18

Pedometer 11-19
- About Pedometer 11-19
- Setting User Information 11-19
- Activating Pedometer 11-19
- Viewing Data 11-20

Bar Code Reader 11-21
- Scanning Bar Codes 11-21
- Checking Scanned Data 11-21

Text Reader 11-23
- Scanning Text 11-24
- Checking Scanned Text 11-24

Advanced Features 11-26
- Osaifu-Keitai® 11-26
- S! GPS Navi 11-26
- Life History Viewer 11-27
- Schedule 11-27
- To Do List 11-28
- Text Memo 11-28
- Alarm 11-29
- Pedometer 11-29
- Bar Code Reader & Text Reader 11-29

Osaifu-Keitai®

About Osaifu-Keitai®

"Osaifu-Keitai®" is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets. Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	Cellular phone equipped with "FeliCa" contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data by holding phone up to a reader/writer.
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets.
Lifestyle-Appli	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history.
  Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli.
  Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.

・Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

▼

Registrations/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.

・ Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Lifestyle-Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Download LifeApp*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Select a Lifestyle-Appli** ⇨ ◉ **(twice)**▶

▶ **To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Right Away**

YES ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Later**

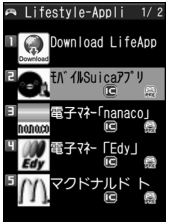
NO ⇨ ◉

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading Lifestyle-Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded Lifestyle-Appli are no longer available.

Activating Lifestyle-Appli

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Lifestyle-Appli*** ⇨ ◉


Lifestyle-Appli 1/ 2
1 Download LifeApp
Download
2 ﾓﾊﾞｲﾙSuicaｱﾌﾟﾘ
3 電子ﾏﾈｰ「nanaco」
nanaco
4 電子ﾏﾈｰ「Edy」
Edy
5 マクドナルド ト

Lifestyle-Appli List

2 **Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ◉**

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Tip

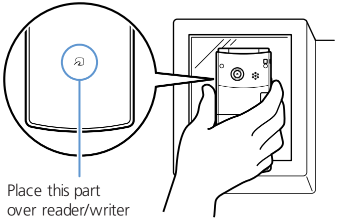
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. Lifestyle-Appli resumes when the call ends.
- To end Lifestyle-Appli:
  While running, ☎ ⇨ *End* ⇨ ◉

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

1 **Hold ᘓ logo up to a reader/writer ⇨ Check scan result on reader/writer display**


Place this part
over reader/writer

Hold handset parallel to the reader/writer. Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

Note

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

Tip

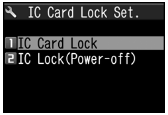
- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between ᘓ logo and reader/writer.

Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to and prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***IC Card Lock Set.*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉**


IC Card Lock Set.
1 IC Card Lock
2 IC Lock(Power-off)

IC Card Lock Setting Window

3 ***IC Card Lock*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

IC appears in Standby.

Setting Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off

1 **[IC Card Lock Setting] window ⇨ *IC Lock (Power-off)* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Maintain* or *IC Card Lock ON* ⇨ ◉**

Tip

- Alternatively, to set IC Card Lock:
  In Standby, press and hold 3
- To cancel IC Card Lock:
  In Standby, press and hold 3 ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉

Remote Lock

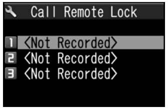
Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Call Remote Lock*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉

3 ***ON*** ⇨ ◉



Call Remote Lock

1 <Not Recorded>
2 <Not Recorded>
3 <Not Recorded>

Call Remote Lock Setting Window

4 ***<Not Recorded>*** ▶

▶ **To Enter and Save Numbers**
◉ ⇨ Enter phone numbers ⇨ ◉

▶ **To save numbers from Phone Book, Redial or Received calls**
📖 ⇨ ***Look-up Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone Book***, ***Redial*** or ***Received Calls*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select a number ⇨ ◉

▶ **To save a Payphone number**
📖 ⇨ ***Payphone*** ⇨ ◉

5 ✉

Tip

- To cancel Call Remote Lock:
  At step 3, select *OFF* ⇨ ◉

Activating Call Remote Lock

1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

Send Caller ID.

2 **Hang up after handset receives the call**

3 **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**

After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

More Features

Advanced

Osaifu-Keitai®
- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

(▶ P. 11-26)

Customize

Key Illumination
- Set Illumination for IC Transmission

(▶ P. 14-28)

Osaifu-Keitai®
- Set Illumination for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli
- Set Whether to Enable Opening from Reader/Writer

(▶ P. 14-28)

S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi

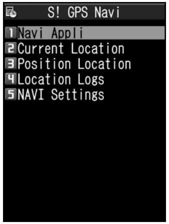
Use this GPS feature to find your location and routes to destinations.

Note

- Positioning accuracy may be affected by GPS satellite/radio station signal strength.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for damages resulting from provided location information.
- S! GPS Navi applications may require subscription.
- Transmission fees apply, even when positioning fails.
- May incur high transmission fees.
- When emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are placed, your location is sent to the corresponding agency (police, etc.). Note, your location is calculated by base station signal and not via the GPS positioning feature.
- 930N does not support Ichi Navi (handset locating service).

Activating a Navi Appli

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! GPS Navi*** ⇨ ◉



S! GPS Navi

1 Navi Appli

2 Current Location

3 Position Location

4 Location Logs

5 NAVI Settings

S! GPS Navi Window

2 ***Navi Appli*** ⇨ ◉

Select an application.

Tip

- To activate Navi appli from positioning for current location:
  [S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ *Position Location* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Navi Appli* ⇨ ◉

Checking Current Location

Confirm your location by map.

1 **[S! GPS Navi] window** ⇨ ***Current Location*** ⇨ ◉

A confirmation appears. Select ***Send*** to allow location to be sent.

To disable confirmation, select ***No Confirmation***.

2 ***Send*** ⇨ ◉

Note

- This function is unavailable when *Send Location Info* is set to *Not Send*; change setting to *Confirm* or *Send*.

Tip

- Alternatively, to check current location:
  [S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ *Position Location* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Read Map* ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

S! GPS Navi
- Share Your Location Via E-mail
- Add Current Location to Phone Book
- Attach Current Location to Image
- Check Location Logs
- Use Location Logs
- Delete Location Log Records

(▶P. 11-26)

Customize

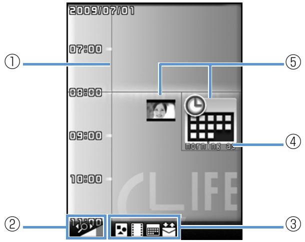
S! GPS Navi
- Set Default Navi Appli
- Begin Positioning Before/After Activating Map
- Save Map URL
- Edit URL Name
- Delete Map URL
- Set Map URL
- Set Location Information Send Method

(▶P. 14-29)

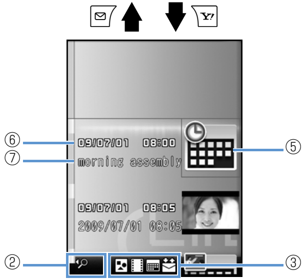
Life History Viewer

View activities in chronological order.

Life History Viewer Window


2009/07/01
07:00
08:00
09:00
10:00
morning as
①
②
③
④
⑤

Life History Viewer Window


✉
Y!
09/07/01 08:00
morning assembly
09/07/01 08:05
2009/07/01 08:05
⑥
⑦
⑤
②
③

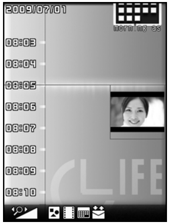
①	Time Axis
②	Scale of Time Axis 🔍 - 🔍 - 🔍 - 🔍
③	Data Type Still image, Image data Video Schedule Received Sent Received & sent messages
④	Data properties Still image, image, Movie: No image Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail
⑤	Icon Still image, image: Image thumbnail Movie: Movie icon Schedule: Schedule icon Mail message (send/receive) history: Mail message (send/receive) icon
⑥	Date and time Still image, image, movie: Shooting, Updating or Saving date and time Schedule: Start date and time Mail message (send/receive) history: Received/Sent date and time
⑦	Title Still image, image, movie: Title Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail

Tip

- Still images and images in JPEG format can be browsed.

Viewing Data in Chronological Order

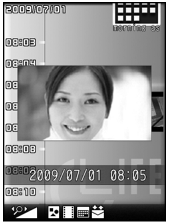
1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Life History Viewer*** ⇨ ●


2009/07/01
morning as
08:03
08:04
08:05
08:06
08:07
08:08
08:09
08:10

Life History Viewer Window

To reduce/enlarge scale of time axis, press ✉ or Y!.

2 **Select a data item ⇨ ◉**


2009/07/01
morning as
08:03
08:04
08:08
2009/07/01 08:05
08:10

Life History Viewer Closeup Window

3

The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.

More Features

Advanced

Life History Viewer

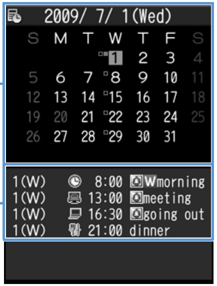
- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

(▶ P. 11-27)

Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set the alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

Schedule Window



```
2009/ 7/ 1(Wed)
 S  M  T  W  T  F  S
          1  2  3  4
 5  6  7  8  9 10 11
12 13 14 15 16 17 18
19 20 21 22 23 24 25
26 27 28 29 30 31
1(W)  8:00 Wmorning
1(W) 13:00 meeting
1(W) 16:30 going out
1(W) 21:00 dinner
```

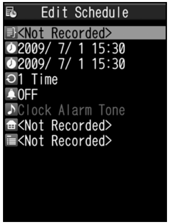
Schedule Window

①	Calendar Blue date: Saturdays Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays __ Today ☐ Events for the morning ■ Events for the afternoon
②	Information Panel Date, day of the week, content type icon, time, and saved content • Content Type Icon ◷ (or a user icon) Event 🄷 Holiday • Event Repetition Icon 🄳 Daily event 🅆 Weekly event 🄼 Monthly event 🅈 Annual event 🄰 Event for over a day

Saving Events to Schedule

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Schedule*** ⇨ ●

2 ✉ ⇨ ***Schedule*** ⇨ ●



```
Edit Schedule
<Not Recorded>
2009/ 7/ 1 15:30
2009/ 7/ 1 15:30
1 Time
OFF
Clock Alarm Tone
<Not Recorded>
<Not Recorded>
```

Event Edit Window

3 ▤ ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter subject** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select an icon** ⇨ ●

4 ⏱ ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter start/end date and time** ⇨ ●

5 ↻ ⇨ ● ⇨ ***1 Time*, *Daily* (🄳), *Weekly* (🅆), *Monthly* (🄼) or *Annually* (🅈)** ⇨ ● (⇨ **Put checkmarks to days of the week** ⇨ ✉)

6 🔔 ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select an alarm notification option** ⇨ ● (⇨ **Enter time**)

7 ♪ ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select an alarm tone type** ⇨ ● (⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select an alarm tone** ⇨ ●)

Folders are unavailable when ***Clock Alarm Tone***, ***Voice Announce*** or ***OFF*** is selected.

8 🏠 ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter place** ⇨ ●

9 ☰ ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter details** ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates.

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or External Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press ▯Music to stop the alarm. When handset is open, press any key to stop the alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

Adding Holidays

1 **[Schedule] window** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Holiday*** ⇨ ●

2 ⏱ ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter year, month and date** ⇨ ●

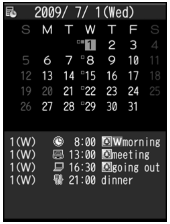
3 🔁 ⇨ ● ⇨ ***1 Time*** **or** ***Annually*** (Y!) ⇨ ●

4 ☰ ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter content** ⇨ ●

5 ✉

Checking Saved Events

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Schedule*** ⇨ ●



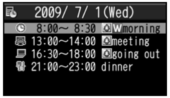
```
2009/ 7/ 1(Wed)
 S  M  T  W  T  F  S
          1  2  3  4
 5  6  7  8  9 10 11
12 13 14 15 16 17 18
19 20 21 22 23 24 25
26 27 28 29 30 31

1(W)  8:00 morning
1(W) 13:00 meeting
1(W) 16:30 going out
1(W) 21:00 dinner
```

Schedule Window

Press Y! to toggle between weekly and monthly view.

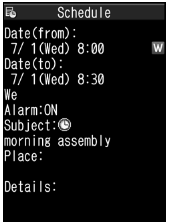
2 ✥ ⇨ **Select a date with events** ⇨ ●



```
2009/ 7/ 1(Wed)
 8:00～ 8:30 morning
13:00～14:00 meeting
16:30～18:00 going out
21:00～23:00 dinner
```

Event List

3 **Select an event ⇨ ◉**



Schedule
Date(from):
7/ 1(Wed) 8:00 W
Date(to):
7/ 1(Wed) 8:30
We
Alarm:ON
Subject:◷
morning assembly
Place:

Details:

Event Details

Deleting Events

To Delete One Event

1 **In [Event List], select an event or [Event Details] ⇨ ☐**

2 ***Delete* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

To Delete Multiple Events

1 **In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇨ ☐**

2 ***Delete* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉**

3 **Select an event ⇨ ◉**

Repeat this step to specify other events.

4 **✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

1 **In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇨ ☐**

2 ***Delete* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Delete Past* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

More Features

Advanced

Schedule

- Sort Events by Icon
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword

(▶ P. 11-27)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(▶ P. 14-2)

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification

(▶ P. 14-28)

To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set Alarm to remind you of deadlines.

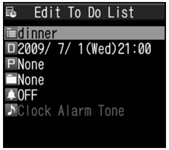
Saving Tasks

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***To Do List*** ⇨ ◉

2 ✉ ⇨ ***New*** ⇨ ◉

■ **To Edit a Saved Task**

⇨ Select a task ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***Edit*** ⇨ ◉



Edit To Do List
dinner
2009/ 7/ 1(Wed)21:00
None
None
OFF
Clock Alarm Tone

Task Edit Window

3 ▤ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter task** ⇨ ◉

Task appears when alarm time arrives.

4 D ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

Enter Date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter due date and time ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**

Choose Date ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a date on Calendar ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter date/time ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Cancel a Due Date**

No Date ⇨ ◉

5 P ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a priority level** ⇨ ◉

6 ▭ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a category** ⇨ ◉

7 🔔 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an alarm notification option** ⇨ ◉ **(**⇨ **Enter time)**

8 ♪ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an alarm tone type** ⇨ ◉ **(**⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an alarm tone** ⇨ ◉**)** ⇨ ✉

Folders are unavailable when ***Clock Alarm Tone***, ***Voice Announce*** or ***OFF*** is selected.

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or External Display) for approximately five minutes.

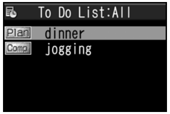
When handset is closed, press ▯Music to stop the alarm. When handset is open, press any key to stop the alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

Checking Saved Tasks

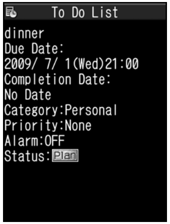
1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***To Do List*** ⇨ ◉



To Do List:All
Plan dinner
Comp jogging

Task List

2 **Select a task** ⇨ ◉



To Do List
dinner
Due Date:
2009/ 7/ 1(Wed)21:00
Completion Date:
No Date
Category:Personal
Priority:None
Alarm:OFF
Status:Plan

Task Details

Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g. Plan).

Deleting Tasks

To Delete One Task

1 **In [Task List], select a task or [Task Details] ⇨ ⊡**

2 ***Delete*** **⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

To Delete Multiple Tasks

1 **[Task List] ⇨ ⊡**

2 ***Delete*** **⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉**

3 **Select a task ⇨ ◉**

Repeat this step to specify other tasks.

4 **✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

To Delete All Completed Tasks

1 **[Task List] ⇨ ⊡**

2 ***Delete*** **⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Delete Completed* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

More Features

Advanced

To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Delete All Tasks

(▶ P. 11-28)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(▶ P. 14-2)

Key Illumination

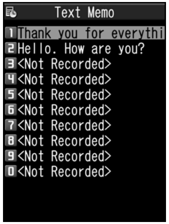
- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification

(▶ P. 14-28)

Save short notes or messages as text memos.
- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

Saving Text Memos

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Text Memo*** ⇨ ◉


Text Memo
1 Thank you for everythi
2 Hello. How are you?
3 <Not Recorded>
4 <Not Recorded>
5 <Not Recorded>
6 <Not Recorded>
7 <Not Recorded>
8 <Not Recorded>
9 <Not Recorded>
0 <Not Recorded>

Text Memo List

2 ***<Not Recorded>*** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ **Enter content** ⇨ ◉

■ To Edit a Saved Text Memo

⇨ Select a text memo ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Edit content ⇨ ◉

Deleting Text Memos

To Delete One Text Memo

1 **[Text Memo List]** ⇨ **Select a text memo** ⇨ ⎘

2 ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

To Delete Multiple Text Memos

1 **[Text Memo List]** ⇨ ⎘

2 ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete selected*** ⇨ ◉

3 **Select a text memo** ⇨ ◉

Repeat this step to specify other text memos.

4 ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

Text Memo
- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

(▶ P. 11-28)

Voice Memo

Record voice for up to 20 seconds. Handset makes single recording and overwrites each time.

- See P. 3-5 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

Recording Your Voice

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Memo*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Record your voice**

Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece.

When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound. To stop recording, press ◉.

Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.
- See P. 3-4 for details on recording the other party’s voice.

Calculator

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Calculator*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter numbers with Keypad ⇨ Enter ＋, －, × or ÷ with Multi Selector**

■ **To Calculate Negative Numbers**

⇨ ◀ ⇨ Enter numbers with keypad ⇨ Enter ＋, －, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

3 ◉

Result appears.

Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.

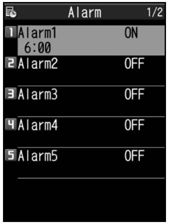
Available Functions

Enter Number	0 - 9
＋ (Add)	▶
－ (Subtract)	◀
× (Multiply)	▲
÷ (Divide)	▼
＝ (Equal)	◉
Decimal Point	✉
Cancel Calculation	CLEAR (AC)
Clear Number	CLEAR (C)

Alarm

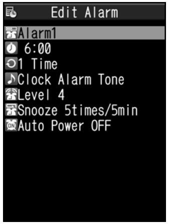
Setting Alarm

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Alarm*** ⇨ ◉


Alarm 1/2
1 Alarm1 ON
6:00
2 Alarm2 OFF
3 Alarm3 OFF
4 Alarm4 OFF
5 Alarm5 OFF

Alarm List

2 **Select an alarm ⇨ ✉**


Edit Alarm
Alarm1
6:00
1 Time
Clock Alarm Tone
Level 4
Snooze 5times/5min
Auto Power OFF

Alarm Setting Window

3 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter title** ⇨ ◉

Title appear in Alarm message.

4 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter time** ⇨ ◉

5 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***1 Time*, *Daily* (D) or *Select Day* (W)** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ **Put checkmarks to days of the week** ⇨ ✉)

6 ♪ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an alarm tone type** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select an alarm tone** ⇨ ◉)

Folders are unavailable when ***Clock Alarm Tone***, ***Voice Announce*** or ***OFF*** is selected.

7 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **to adjust volume** ⇨ ◉

8 ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Set Snooze**

ON ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter number of activation times ⇨ Enter time interval

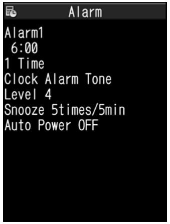
▶ **To Cancel Snooze**

OFF ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter ringing duration

9 ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON* or *OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

■ **To View Alarm Entries**

⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉


Alarm
Alarm1
6:00
1 Time
Clock Alarm Tone
Level 4
Snooze 5times/5min
Auto Power OFF

Alarm Details

Alarm Activation Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm activates and animation appears (on Display or External Display). When Auto Power is set to ON (Alarm Setting window), handset automatically turns on for alarm.

Press ▯Music to stop the alarm tone with handset closed. Press any key to stop the alarm tone with handset open.

When Snooze is set to ***OFF***, press any key again to cancel the alarm with two short beeps, and return to the window before the alarm activation.

When Snooze is set to ***ON***, the alarm sounds repeatedly in the set time interval. Press ⏎ to cancel Snooze with two short beeps.

Note

- The alarm and snooze cancellation beeps do not sound when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.
- Set the auto power-on function to *OFF* in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, the alarm sounds from Earpiece. Snooze does not work even if it is set to *ON*.

Canceling Alarm

1 **[Alarm List] ⇨ Select an alarm ⇨ Y!**

Each time you press Y!, the alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if the alarm is canceled.

More Features

Advanced

Alarm

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

(▶ P. 11-29)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(▶ P. 14-2)

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification
- Set Illumination for Snooze Notification

(▶ P. 14-28)

Pedometer

About Pedometer

Use Pedometer to track number of steps and elapsed time. Pedometer also records traveled distance and burned calories/fat.

Note

- Accuracy may be affected by walking style or vibrations (Calculation is paused when handset vibrates/shakes).
- 歩行距離 (Distance), 消費カロリー (Burned Calories) and 脂肪燃焼量 (Burned Fat) are based on the entered height, weight and stride. Use these results as a rough guide only.
- When handset is inside a bag or holder, place handset in a pocket or compartment. This can prevent handset from moving around and provide a more accurate count.

きっちり歩数 (Paced Steps)

Pedometer shows two types of steps:

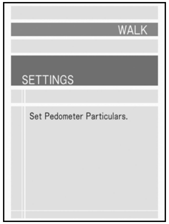
- Paced Steps: Records number of steps taken at a pace of 90 steps/minute for over 10 continuous minutes.
- Steps: Shows total number of steps (including Paced Steps).

Using Pedometer for the First Time

A confirmation appears the first time you use Pedometer. Press ◉ to begin initial setup (go to step 3 of “Setting User Information“).

Setting User Information

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Pedometer*** ⇨ ◉

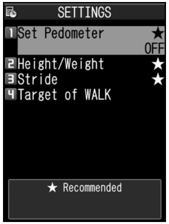

WALK

SETTINGS

Set Pedometer Particulars.

Pedometer Window

2 ***SETTINGS*** ⇨ ◉


SETTINGS

1 Set Pedometer ★ OFF

2 Height/Weight ★

3 Stride ★

4 Target of WALK

★ Recommended

SETTINGS Window

3 ***Height/Weight*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter height and weight** ⇨ ✉

4 ***Stride*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Enter Manually**

Enter stride ⇨ ✉

▶ **To Calibrate**

↰ ⇨ ***Calibration*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Enter distance to measure ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Walk distance ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Calibration is available when *Set Pedometer* is *ON*.

Activating Pedometer

1 **[SETTINGS] window** ⇨ ***Set Pedometer*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

🚶 appears when Pedometer is activated.

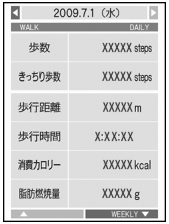
Step count is saved every 10 minutes.

Tip

- Pedometer is unavailable when handset power is off.
- To Deactivate Pedometer:
  [SETTINGS] window ⇨ *Set Pedometer* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *OFF* ⇨ ◉

Viewing Data

1 **[Pedometer] window ⇨ *WALK* ⇨ ◉**



◀ 2009.7.1（水）▶
WALK DAILY

歩数	XXXXX steps
きっちり歩数	XXXXX steps
歩行距離	XXXXX m
歩行時間	X:XX:XX
消費カロリー	XXXXX kcal
脂肪燃焼量	XXXXX g

▲ WEEKLY ▼

WALK Window (Data View)

■ To Change to Graph View

⇨ Y!

Press to toggle Graph and Data views.

■ To Change to List View

⇨ ◉

Press to toggle List and Data views.

Tip

- In WALK window, category names appear only in Japanese.
  –歩数 (Steps)
  –きっちり歩数 (Paced Steps)
  –歩行距離 (Distance)
  –歩行時間 (Time)
  –消費カロリー (Burned Calories)
  –脂肪燃焼量 (Burned Fat)
- 歩数 (Steps) includes the value for きっちり歩数 (Paced Steps).

Available Functions

Data View

Toggle *DAILY*, *WEEKLY* and *MONTHLY* modes	↕
Scroll past data	↔
Activate Music Player	✉

Graph View

Toggle *DAILY*, *WEEKLY* and *MONTHLY* modes	↕
Scroll past data	↔
Activate Music Player	✉
Toggle data	◉ to cycle through 歩数→歩行距離→消費カロリー

List View

Select previous/next day (Select date)	↕ ・Press ◉ to switch to Data View for selected day.
View other months	↔
Activate Music Player	✉
Toggle data	Y! to cycle items through 歩数 & きっちり歩数→歩行距離 & 歩行時間→消費カロリー & 脂肪燃焼量

More Features

Advanced

Pedometer

- Set a Walking Target
- Reset Today's Data
- Reset All Data

(▶ P. 11-29)

Bar Code Reader

JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

About JAN & QR Codes

JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers. Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

QR Code

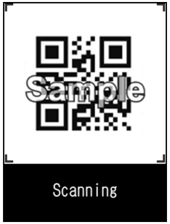
A two-dimensional code representing alphanumerics, kanji, kana, or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.

Scanning Bar Codes

● Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the bar code.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Bar Code Reader*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Frame the bar code in the recognition field**



Scanning

Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.

┌, ┐, └ and ┘ indicate the corners of the recognition field.

Press ◎ to toggle zoom.

■ **To Cancel Scanning**

⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OK*** ⇨ ◉

■ **To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)**

⇨ ***OK*** ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Scan a QR code

Repeat this step to scan other QR codes. All component QR codes must be scanned in order to access or save scanned data on handset.

3 **Check scanned data**

■ **To Discard Scanned Data**

⇨ CLEAR ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

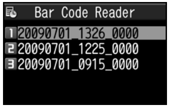
4 ⇨ ***Store*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OK*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition field.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.

Checking Scanned Data

1 **[Bar Code Scanning] window** ⇨ ⇨ ***Reading Data List*** ⇨ ◉



Bar Code Reader

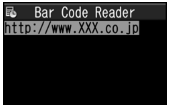
1 20090701_1326_0000

2 20090701_1225_0000

3 20090701_0915_0000

Scanned Bar Code Data List

2 **Select an entry** ⇨ ◉



Bar Code Reader

http://www.XXX.co.jp

Scanned Bar Code Data Details

Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

More Features

Advanced

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

(▶ P. 11-30)

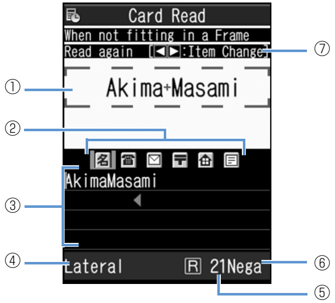
Text Reader

Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.
Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.

Text Scanning Window



Card Read
When not fitting in a Frame
Read again [◀▶]:Item Change
Akima+Masami
AkimaMasami
Lateral
R 21Nega

Text Scanning Window

①	Recognition Frame
②	Scan Item Icons 名 Name ☎ Phone number ✉ E-mail address 〒 Postal code ⌂ Address ▤ Memo To Address Sub Subject ▤ Message text
③	Recognized Text Field
④	Recognition Mode
⑤	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned
⑥	Negative Mode ***Nega*** appears when ***NEGA/POSI Mode*** is set to ***Negative Fix***.
⑦	Key Guidance

Text Reader

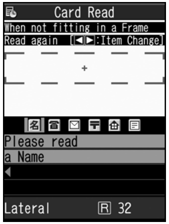
Scanning Text

- Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the text.

<Example> Scanning in *Card Read* mode

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Text Reader*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***New*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a scan mode** ⇨ ◉


Card Read
When not fitting in a Frame
Read again [◀▶]:Item Change]
+
Please read
a Name
Lateral
R 32

Text Scanning Window

3 ◁▷ ⇨ **Select a scan item icon** ⇨ **Frame text in the recognition frame**

Press △▽ to toggle zoom in and zoom out.

4 ◉

The text is scanned.

The recognized text appears.

■ To Rescan the Same Text

⇨ CLEAR ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

■ When Scanned Text Overflows Recognized Text Field

⇨ ✥ to scroll the field

■ To Scan Following Text

⇨ ◉ ⇨ Frame text in the recognition frame (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) ⇨ ◉

■ To Scan Another Item

⇨ ◉ ⇨ ◁▷ ⇨ Select a scan item icon ⇨ Frame text in the recognition frame ⇨ ◉

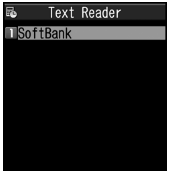
5 Y!

Tip

- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition frame.
- When *Processing* ··· appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
  - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
  - Decorated characters are scanned.
  - Spaces between characters are uneven.
  - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
  - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.

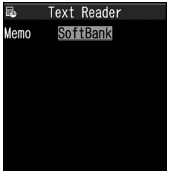
Checking Scanned Text

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Text Reader*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reading Data List*** ⇨ ◉


Text Reader
1 SoftBank

Scanned Text List

2 **Select an entry** ⇨ ◉


Text Reader
Memo
SoftBank

Scanned Text Details

More Features

Advanced

Scanning Text

- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance ON/OFF
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

(▶P. 11-29)

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

(▶P. 11-30)

Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here

【Lifestyle-Appli List】..................................P. 11-3
【Call Remote Lock Setting】window... P. 11-4

Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

【Lifestyle-Appli List】 ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Properties*** ⇨ ◉

Check Memory Status

【Lifestyle-Appli List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ◉

Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

【Lifestyle-Appli List】 ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

【Call Remote Lock Setting】window ⇨ Select phone number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Change phone number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

【Call Remote Lock Setting】window ⇨ Select phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete this*** or ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

S! GPS Navi

Start Here

【S! GPS Navi】window.........................P. 11-5

Share Your Location Via E-mail

【S! GPS Navi】window ⇨ ***Position Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Paste to Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Create S!Mail ⇨ ✉

Add Current Location to Phone Book

【S! GPS Navi】window ⇨ ***Position Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Add to Phonebook*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select add method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)

Attach Current Location to Image

【S! GPS Navi】window ⇨ ***Position Location*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Attach to Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y!

Check Location Logs

【S! GPS Navi】window ⇨ ***Location Logs*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ◉

Use Location Logs

【S! GPS Navi】window ⇨ ***Location Logs*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a location log ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Read Map browser***, ***Read Map S! Appli***, ***Go To***, ***Paste to Mail***, ***Add to Phone Book*** or ***Attach to Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Follow onscreen instructions

Delete Location Log Records

【S! GPS Navi】window ⇨ ***Location Logs*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a location log ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select logs ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Life History Viewer

Start Here

【Life History Viewer】 window .... P. 11-7
【Life History Viewer Closeup】 window .... P. 11-8

Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

【Life History Viewer】 window / 【Life History Viewer Closeup】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Display setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

☞ Only checked items appear in Life History Viewer window.

Update Life History Viewer

【Life History Viewer】 window / 【Life History Viewer Closeup】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Reload*** ⇨ ◉

Schedule

Start Here

【Schedule】 window.............................P. 11-9
【Event Edit】 window...........................P. 11-9
【Event List】.. P. 11-10
【Event Details】....................................... P. 11-11

Sort Events by Icon

【Schedule】 window, 【Event List】 or 【Event Details】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Icon Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ◉

Check Number of Saved Events

【Schedule】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***No. of Schedules*** ⇨ ◉

Edit an Event

【Event List】 / 【Event Details】 (⇨ Select an event) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉

Copy an Event

【Event List】 / 【Event Details】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Copy*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter start/end date and time ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉

☞ Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event

- To Make Secret Setting

【Event Edit】 window ⇨ Enter each item ⇨ ✉

- To Cancel Secret Setting

【Event List】 / 【Event Details】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Release Secret*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Before making/canceling secret setting, set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-7).

Delete All Events

【Schedule】 window, 【Event List】 or 【Event Details】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Reset Holidays

【Schedule】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Reset Holiday*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Search Information by Keyword

【Event Details】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Quick Search*** ⇨ ◉

- To Enter a Keyword
  ⇨ ***Enter Keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter keyword ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! or Browser ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item from search results ⇨ ◉
- To Enter a Keyword with Quote Keyword
  ⇨ ***Quote Keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Subject***, ***Details*** or ***Place*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Move cursor to head of keyword to search ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Move cursor to last character of keyword to search ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! or Browser ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select item from results ⇨ ◉
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Searches
  ⇨ ***History*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select keyword ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Y! or Browser ⇨ Select item from results ⇨ ◉

To Do List

Start Here

【Task List】 .... P. 11-12
【Task Details】 .... P. 11-12

Sort Tasks by Category

【Task List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Category Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a category ⇨ ◉

Change Order of Tasks

【Task List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Sort/Filter*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a criterion ⇨ ◉

Set Task Status

【Task List】 / 【Task Details】 (⇨ Select a task) ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Change Status*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a status ⇨ ◉

☞ The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List and in Task Details.

☞ When ***Completion*** is set as status, enter the completion date.

Delete All Tasks

【Task List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Text Memo

Start Here

【Text Memo List】 ....P. 11-14

Save a Text Memo to Schedule

【Text Memo List】 ⇨ Select a text memo ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit Schedule*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter each item ⇨ ✉

☞ Event Edit window opens with the text memo content set as event details.

Sort Text Memos by Category

【Text Memo List】 ⇨ Select a text memo ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Category*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a category ⇨ ◉

Check Text Memo Information

【Text Memo List】 ⇨ Select a text memo ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Text Memo Info*** ⇨ ◉

Delete All Text Memos

【Text Memo List】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Alarm

Start Here

【Alarm List】	**P. 11-17**
【Alarm Details】	**P. 11-17**

Cancel All Alarms

【Alarm List】 / 【Alarm Details】 ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Alarm Settings

【Alarm List】 / 【Alarm Details】 (⇨ Select an alarm) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉

Pedometer

Start Here

【Pedometer】 window	**P. 11-19**
【SETTINGS】 window	**P. 11-19**
【WALK】 window	**P. 11-20**

Set a Walking Target

【SETTINGS】 window ⇨ ***Target of WALK*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select item for target ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter ***Step***, ***Distance*** or ***Calorie*** ⇨ ✉

☞ Alternatively, set from Function menu in WALK window.

Reset Today's Data

【WALK】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Today Data Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Reset All Data

【Pedometer】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***All Data Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

Start Here

【Scanned Bar Code Data List】	**P. 11-21**
【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】	**P. 11-21**
【Text Scanning】 window	**P. 11-24**
【Scanned Text List】	**P. 11-24**
【Scanned Text Details】	**P. 11-24**

Scanning Text

Correct Scanned Text

【Text Scanning】 window ⇨ Scan text ⇨ ◎ to move cursor to the character you want to correct ⇨ Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list

☞ Press ✱ to toggle upper case and lower case.

Edit Scanned Text

【Text Scanning】 window ⇨ Scan text ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Edit*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit text using keypad

☞ To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press ▤, select ***Select Recog. Data*** and then press ◉.

Set Printing Status of Text

【Text Scanning】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***NEGA/POSI Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto setting***, ***Positive Fix*** or ***Negative Fix*** ⇨ ◉

☞ Set to ***Positive Fix*** when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.

☞ Set to ***Negative Fix*** when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

Set Guidance ON/OFF

【Text Scanning】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Guidance OFF*** or ***Guidance ON*** ⇨ ◉

Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

【Text Scanning】 window ⇨ ▤ ⇨ ***Vertical Writing*** or ***Lateral Writing*** ⇨ ◉

Using Scanned Data

Make a Call

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】/【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Dialing*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Phone*** or ***Video Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dial*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Talk ⇨ ☎ to end call

Compose a Message

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】/【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select an e-mail address ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Create S! Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Compose and send S! Mail

Access the Internet

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】/【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select a URL ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Internet*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Save to Phone Book

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】/【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add to Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Phone*
  ⇨ *Phone* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)
- To Select *USIM*
  ⇨ *USIM* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ✉ (⇨ *Overwrite* or *Add* ⇨ ◉) (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉)

Save a Bookmark

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】/【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select a URL ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add Bookmark*** ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉

Search Phone Book

【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Search Phone Book*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book

Save a Text Memo

【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Add to Memo*** ⇨ ◉

Copy Text

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】/【Scanned Text Details】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Copy*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select beginning of characters ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select end of characters ⇨ ◉

Edit Title of Scanned Data

【Scanned Bar Code Data List】 ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

Delete Scanned Data

【Scanned Bar Code Data List】/【Scanned Text List】 ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ▣

- To Select *Delete This*
  ⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete All*
  ⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Data Management

About Data Folder 12-2

Accessing Files 12-3

- Opening Files.. 12-3
- Quick Album (Slideshow).................................. 12-5
- Creating Animations 12-6
- Using Playlist (Melodies) 12-7
- Using Playlists (Videos).................................... 12-7

Editing Files.. 12-9

- Editing Still Images... 12-9
- Editing Videos 12-10

File & Folder Management..................... 12-11

- Creating a Folder... 12-11
- Moving Files to a Different Folder 12-11

About Memory Card.............................. 12-12

- Inserting & Removing a Memory Card........... 12-12

Managing Memory Cards 12-13

- Formatting a Memory Card 12-13
- Accessing Memory Card Data........................ 12-13
- Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card.. 12-14
- Configuring Print Settings of Images............. 12-15

Advanced Features................................. 12-16

- Accessing Files 12-16
- Editing Files 12-17
- Managing Folders 12-18
- Managing Files 12-18
- Memory Card.. 12-19

About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. New data created by handset functions or obtained via the Internet or mail are saved to different folders according to the file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

Folders & Files in Data Folder

My Picture[1]
Image files such as those taken by camera and downloaded My Pictograms

Melody
Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

S! Appli
Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

Widget
Downloaded widgets files

Ring Songs·Music
Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®, downloaded music files and music files transferred using MTP mode

Videos[1]
Video files such as those recorded by camera

Books
Downloaded book files

Key Illumination
Downloaded key illumination files

TV[1]
Recorded programs[2] and still images captured from programs[3]

PDF
Downloaded PDF files and saved PDF files

Other Documents[2]
Saved document files (Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, Text)

[1] When *Auto-change Screen* is set to *ON*, turn handset on its left side during playback for Landscape View.

[2] Can be saved on memory card only.

[3] Can be saved on handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:
YES ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

- You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
- You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.

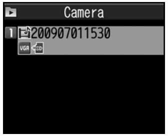
Accessing Files

Opening Files

<Example> Open Video File

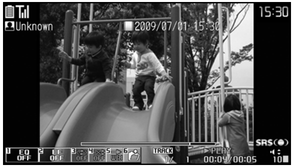
1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ●

2 Select a folder and a sub folder ⇨ ●



File List

3 Select a file ⇨ ●



Opened File Window

Opening Files on Memory Card

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ●

2 Select a folder ⇨ ● ⇨ ***microSD*** ⇨ ●

3 Select a folder ⇨ ●

4 Select a file ⇨ ●

Indicators in File List

In File List, indicators appear for settable items.

QVGA	QVGA movie
VGA	VGA movie
✉	Attachable to mail
HTML	Insertable in Graphic Mail
	Settable as wallpaper, etc.
♪	Settable as a ringtone
	Location information usable
Ir	Infrared transmittable
SD	Copyable to memory card
✂	Editable
	Over 10 MB (Viewable only in Memory Card)

Functions in My Picture Window

Selecting a file in My Picture folder opens a window such as below.

My Picture Window

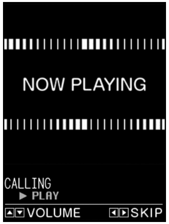
The following operations are possible in My Picture window.

Switch Files	◎
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	Y! • In full screen mode, view lengthwise images in Portrait View and widthwise images in Landscape View.
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	● ⇨ Y! or ✉
Show at Actual Size*	● ⇨ ☐
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	✥

* Press ● to return to the original size.

Functions in Melody Window

Selecting a file in Melody folder opens a window such as below.


NOW PLAYING
CALLING
▶ PLAY
▲▼VOLUME
◀▶SKIP

Melody Window

The following operations are possible in Melody window.

Switch Files	◎
Adjust Volume	◎
	▲マナー or ▼📷
Stop	◉
End	CLEAR

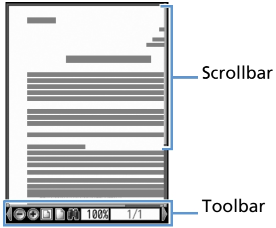
Keys Available during Key Illumination File Playback

Key Backlight flashes according to the file selected in Key Illumination.
The following operations are possible while checking files.

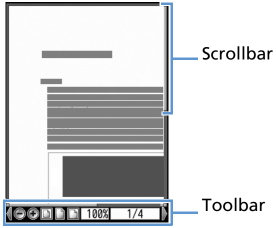
Stop	◉
Set to Key Illumination	✉

Keys Available in PDF & Other Documents Windows

PDF window or Other Documents window appears for a file selected in the respective folder.


Scrollbar
Toolbar
100%
1/1

PDF Window


Scrollbar
Toolbar
100%
1/4

Other Documents Window

Accessing Files

The following operations are possible in PDF or Other Documents window.

Scroll	✥
Show/Hide Toolbar and Scrollbar	8
Toggle Page and Toolbar Operation	✉
Zoom Out	1
Display Entire Page	2
Zoom In	3
Display Previous Page	4 or ▯マナー
Display Next Page	6 or ▯📷
Search Text	7
Help	0
Search Next	#
Search Previous	*

Toolbar Icons

Use ◎ to select icons and ◎ to toggle icon view.

Icon	Description
100%	Specify zoom
1/2	Specify page
⊖/⊕	Zoom out/zoom in
▯/▯/▯	Entire page/100% zoom/ match width to Display
⏮/◀/▶/⏭	First/previous/next/last page
🔍	Search text
⟲/⟳	Rotate L/R 90 deg
⧉	Copy text
Map	Toggle show/hide shrunk page image
⇄	Toggle text wrap and no wrap at Display width
?	View operation descriptions for Toolbar and keys
▯/▭/▯▯	Single page/continuous/ two page view

Tip

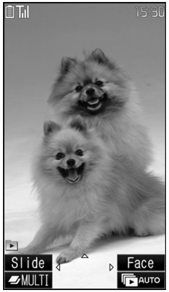
- Select files in S! Appli to activate S! Appli. For information about S! Appli, see P. 9-8.
- Select files in Ring Songs·Music or Videos to activate Music Player. For details, see P. 9-3.

Quick Album (Slideshow)

View JPEG images saved in My Picture. Set images to switch automatically or manually.

- Quick Album is also available for JPEG images saved to Memory Cards.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***My Picture*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Y!



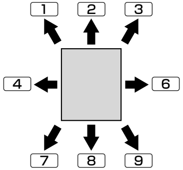
Quick Album Window

Tip

- Alternatively, activate this function from MENU ⇨ *Camera* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Quick Album* ⇨ ◉
- Open folder images in the following order. When opening from *Camera*, images in the folder set with *Select to Save* and in *Camera* open first.
  ①Inbox
  ②Camera
  ③User created folder
  ④microSD pictures

Keys Available in Quick Album

During Manual Play

Previous/next image	◎
Zoom in/out	◎
Image scroll (zoomed in)	1 - 9 Scroll in below directions. 
Return to original size (zoomed in/out)	◉
Image switch effect (Slide→Fade→Cube→RGB)	✉ • Effect changes with each press. Slide: Slides to right or left Fade: Fade in/out Cube: Rotates as cube RGB: Splits into red, green and blue then rotates
Detect face and zoom in (Face)	Y! • Press Y! to toggle when several faces are detected.
Start Photo Slide-show (auto play)	▣

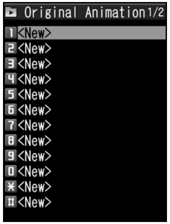
During Auto Play

Previous/next image	◎
End Photo Slide-show (auto play)	▣

Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***My Picture*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Original Animation*** ⇨ ◉



Original Animation 1/2
1 <New>
2 <New>
3 <New>
4 <New>
5 <New>
6 <New>
7 <New>
8 <New>
9 <New>
0 <New>
* <New>
# <New>

Original Animation List

2 ***<New>*** ⇨ ◉

3 **Select a frame** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a still image** ⇨ ◉

Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.

■ **To Cancel an Assigned Image**

⇨ Select a frame ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Release This*** ⇨ ◉

4 ✉

Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.

Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List and press ◉ to play the animation.

Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Melody*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Playlist***

2 ⊡ ⇨ ***Edit Playlist*** ⇨ ◉

■ To Clear Playlist

⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Release Playlist*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

3 **Select a number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a melody ⇨ ◉**

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

■ To Cancel an Assigned Melody

⇨ Select a number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Release This*** ⇨ ◉

4 ✉

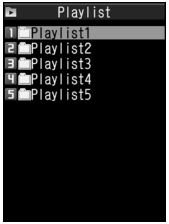
Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press ◉ to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Videos*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Playlist*** ⇨ ◉



Playlist
1 Playlist1
2 Playlist2
3 Playlist3
4 Playlist4
5 Playlist5

Playlist Window

2 **Select a playlist ⇨ ⊡ ⇨ *Edit Playlist* ⇨ ◉**

3 **Select a number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a video ⇨ ◉**

Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

■ To Cancel an Assigned Video

⇨ Select a number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Release This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

4 ✉

Tip

- Select a playlist in Playlist window and press ◉ to play the playlist.

More Features

Advanced

Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(▶ P. 12-16)

Viewing Images

- Check Location Information
- Paste Location Information to Mail
- Save Location Information to Phone Book
- Attach Location Information to Image
- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

(▶ P. 12-16)

Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(▶ P. 12-17)

Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List
- Clear a Playlist

(▶ P. 12-17)

Viewing PDF Files

- Check PDF Properties

(▶ P. 12-17)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Image List View

(▶ P. 14-3)

Editing Files

Editing Still Images

Basic Flow of Operations

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***My Picture*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉

My Picture Window

2 ⊡ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an editing option ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit image

3 ◉ to end editing

4 ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Selecting ***YES*** overwrites the original image. Selecting ***NO*** saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder.

Note

- Only images with ✂ in File List can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.

Adding a Frame

1 [My Picture] window ⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Frame*** ⇨ ◉

2 Select a frame ⇨ ◉

■ **To Change Frame**

⇨ ⇔

■ **To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees**

⇨ ✉

■ **To Cancel Frame**

⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Cancel*** ⇨ ◉

3 ◉

4 ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Adding Stamps

1 [My Picture] window ⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Marker Stamp*** ⇨ ◉

2 Select a marker stamp ⇨ ◉

■ **To Rotate Marker Stamp**

⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***90° to right***, ***90° to left*** or ***180°*** ⇨ ◉

■ **To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp**

⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Scale up*** or ***Scale down*** ⇨ ◉

■ **To Cancel Marker Stamp**

⇨ ✉

3 ✥ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉

■ **To Paste Another Marker Stamp**

⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select a marker stamp ⇨ ◉

4 ◉

5 ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Pasting a Text Stamp

1 [My Picture] window ⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Character Stamp*** ⇨ ◉

2 Enter text ⇨ ◉

■ **To Edit Text**

⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Character input*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter text ⇨ ◉

■ **To Change Text Color**

⇨ ⊡ ⇨ ***Character Color*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉

Press ✉ to toggle color palettes.

■ **To Change Font Type**

⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Font Type*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Gothic*** or ***Ming-Cho*** ⇨ ◉

■ **To Change Font Size**

⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Font Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a font size ⇨ ◉

3 ✣ ⇨ **Select a position** ⇨ ◉

4 ◉

5 ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** **or** ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Cropping an Image

1 **[My Picture] window** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Trim away*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Select a size** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✣ **to select an area** ⇨ ◉

3 ◉

4 ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** **or** ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Videos*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a video** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Video*** ⇨ ◉

2 ▣ ⇨ ***Trim Videos*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Any Size*** **or** ***295KB*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Start from Beginning**

✉

▶ **To Start from a Halfway Point**

◉ ⇨ At a desired point ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

Video plays and clipping starts.

The video playback and clipping start at the same time.

3 ◉ **to stop** ⇨ ✉

Selected portion plays.

When ***295KB*** is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 295 KB.

4 ◉ **(twice)** ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Note

- Only QCIF (176 x 144) or smaller videos with ✂ in File List can be clipped.

More Features

Advanced

Editing Files

- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

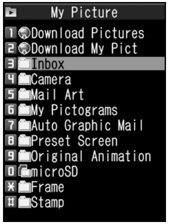
(▶ P. 12-17)

File & Folder Management

Creating a Folder

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a folder type** ⇨ ◉

<Example>When My Picture is Selected



My Picture
1 Download Pictures
2 Download My Pict
3 Inbox
4 Camera
5 Mail Art
6 My Pictograms
7 Auto Graphic Mail
8 Preset Screen
9 Original Animation
0 microSD
* Frame
# Stamp

Folder List

2 ▣ ⇨ ***Add Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter folder name** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

Moving Files to a Different Folder

1 **[File List]** ⇨ **Select a file** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Move*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Move Selected File**

Move this ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Move Multiple Files**

Move selected ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Move All Files in a Folder**

Move all ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody, Video, Book or PDF Folder

(▶ P. 12-18)

Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

(▶ P. 12-18)

About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

- Handset supports memory cards of up to 8 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

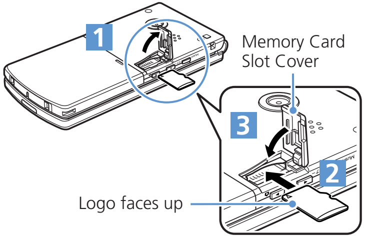
Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a memory card.

Insertion

1 **Open Slot Cover**

2 **Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks**

Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



3 **Close Slot Cover**

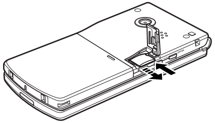
Tip

- If SD appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

Removal

1 **Press and release**

Gently pull out memory card.



Note

- Memory card may spring out.
- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.

Managing Memory Cards

Formatting a Memory Card

- ● Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- ● Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***microSD Manager*** ⇨ ◉

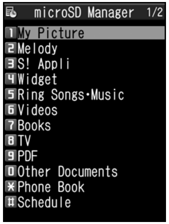
2 ▣ ⇨ ***microSD format*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

Accessing Memory Card Data

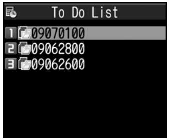
1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***microSD Manager*** ⇨ ◉



microSD Manager 1/2
1 My Picture
2 Melody
3 S! Appli
4 Widget
5 Ring Songs･Music
6 Videos
7 Books
8 TV
9 PDF
0 Other Documents
* Phone Book
# Schedule

microSD Manager Window

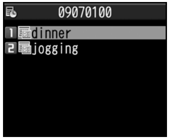
2 **Select a category** ⇨ ◉



To Do List
1 09070100
2 09062800
3 09062600

File List

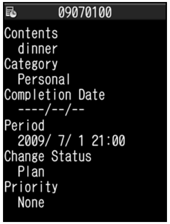
3 **Select a file** ⇨ ◉



09070100
1 dinner
2 jogging

Data List

4 **Select a data item** ⇨ ◉



09070100
Contents
dinner
Category
Personal
Completion Date
----/--/--
Period
2009/ 7/ 1 21:00
Change Status
Plan
Priority
None

Data Details

Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs, books, PDF files

Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

1 **[Data List] ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Copy to microSD* ⇨ ◉▶**

▶ **To Copy Selected Data**
Copy this ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select destination folder ⇨ ◉)

▶ **To Copy Multiple Data**
Copy selected ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select copy destination folder ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another data) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Copy All Data**
Copy All ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select copy destination folder ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- When one Phone Book entry or Schedule event that is set as secret is copied to memory card, its secret setting is canceled.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in My Picture folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.

Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

1 **MENU ⇨ *Data Folder* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder type ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *microSD* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder and sub-folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Copy to Phone* ⇨ ◉▶**

▶ **To Copy Selected Data**
Copy this ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Copy Multiple Data**
Copy selected ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another data) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Copy All Data**
Copy All ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

To Copy PIM Data to Handset

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***microSD Manager*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a PIM data type** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a data item** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Copy/OW to Phone*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Copy Selected Files**
Copy This ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Copy Multiple Files**
Copy selected ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ✉

▶ **To Copy All Files**
Copy All ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ **(**⇨ ***YES*** **or** ***NO*** ⇨ ◉**)**

Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***My Picture*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***microSD*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***DCIM*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Select a folder** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Select a still image** ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***DPOF setting*** ⇨ ◉▶

▶ **To Specify Selected Images**
DPOF set One ⇨ ◉

▶ **To Specify Multiple Images**
DPOF set Choice ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a still image ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another image) ⇨ ✉

3 ***Print*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Print Sheets*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ **Enter number of prints** ⇨ ◉

4 ***a Date*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** **or** ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

5 ✉

More Features

Advanced

Memory Card
- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(▶ P. 12-19)

Accessing Files

Start Here

【File List】 .... P. 12-3
【Opened File】 window .... P. 12-3
【My Picture】 window........................ P. 12-3
【Melody】 window.............................. P. 12-4
【PDF】 window .... P. 12-4
【Original Animation List】 .... P. 12-6
【Playlist】 window............................... P. 12-7

Opening Files

Check File Information

【File List】/【Opened File】 window (⇨ Select a file) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Image Info***, ***Melody Info***, ***Properties***, ***Key illum. Info.***, ***Document Info*** or ***Location Info*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***Loc. Info Detail*** ⇨ ◉)

Change Order of Files

【File List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a criterion ⇨ ◉

Set an Image to Appear in Standby

【File List】/【Opened File】 window (⇨ Select a file) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Set as Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Stand-by Display*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Confirm preview ⇨ ◉)

☞ Set images to appear when making calls or sending messages.

Set a Video to Appear in Standby

【File List】 ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Stand-by Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

【File List】/【Opened File】 window (⇨ Select a file) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

☞ Only melodies can be set as ringtones from Opened File window.

Viewing Images

Check Location Information

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Location Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Read Map*** ⇨ ◉

Paste Location Information to Mail

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Location Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Paste to Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Create S! Mail ⇨ ✉

Save Location Information to Phone Book

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Location Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Add to Phonebook*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select save method ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ◉ (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ ✉ (⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ◉)

Attach Location Information to Image

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Location Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***From Position Loc.***, ***From Loc. History***, ***From Phonebook***, ***From Owner Details*** or ***From Image*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉) (⇨ Select location information ⇨ ◉)

☞ To delete attached location information, select *Delete Loc. Info* and press ◉.

Play Animation from the Beginning

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Retry*** ⇨ ◉

Compose Four Images to Make One

【File List】 ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Composite Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Repeat the same step to assign three other images to their respective positions ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ◉

☞ Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating composite images.

☞ Copyright-protected images are unavailable.

☞ Images saved on memory card cannot be used.

☞ Some images cannot be used depending on their size.

Set Display Size of an Image

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Set Image Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Normal*** or ***Fit in Display*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Title of an Original Animation

【Original Animation List】 ⇨ Select an animation ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉

Cancel an Original Animation

【Original Animation List】 ⇨ Select an animation ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Release Animation*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Playing Melodies

Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

【Melody】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Set Repeat Play*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

Playing Videos

Switch Display Format of File List

【File List】 ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***List Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Title*** or ***Title+Image*** ⇨ ◉

Clear a Playlist

【Playlist】 window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Release Playlist*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Viewing PDF Files

Check PDF Properties

【PDF】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Document Property*** ⇨ ◉

Editing Files

Start Here

【My Picture】 window........................... P. 12-9

Retouch an Image

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Retouch*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an effect ⇨ ◉ (three times) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Adjust Image Brightness

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Brightness*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ⟳ to adjust brightness ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Rotate an Image

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Rotate*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***90° to right***, ***90° to left*** or ***180°*** ⇨ ◉ (three times) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Change Image Size

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ☰ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Change Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉ (three times) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ◉

Correct Backlight

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Correct Backlight*** ⇨ ● (three times) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ●

Refresh Skin Tone

【My Picture】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Image*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Refresh Skin Tone*** ⇨ ● (three times) ⇨ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ⇨ ●

Managing Folders

Start Here

【Folder List】 .... P. 12-11

Edit a Folder Name

【Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Folder Name*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit folder name ⇨ ●

☞ Only names of user-created folders can be edited.

Delete a Folder

【Folder List】 ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Folder*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● (⇨ Select delete method ⇨ ●) (⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●) ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●

☞ Only user-created folders can be deleted.

☞ Files in the selected folder are also deleted.

☞ When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody, Video, Book or PDF Folder

【Folder List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete all Image***, ***Delete All*** or ***Delete all Doc.*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●

☞ When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Managing Files

Start Here

【File List】 .... P. 12-3

Edit a Title in My Picture File List

【File List】 ⇨ Select an image file ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ●

☞ Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Check Volume of Saved Files

【File List】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ●

Edit a File Name

【File List】 ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Edit File Name*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit file name ⇨ ●

☞ Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Delete Files

【File List】 ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete this*
  ⇨ *Delete this* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select file ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete all*
  ⇨ *Delete all* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Memory Card

Start Here

【microSD Manager】 window .... P. 12-13
【File List】 .... P. 12-13
【Data List】 .... P. 12-13
【Data Details】 .... P. 12-13

Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

【microSD Manager】 window, 【File List】, 【Data List】 or 【Data Details】 ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***microSD Info*** or ***Memory Info*** ⇨ ◉

Check & Repair Memory Card

【microSD Manager】 window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Check microSD*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

☞ To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press ✉ or ⌐.

☞ Some memory cards may not be repairable.

Delete Data on Memory Card

【File List】 ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉

- To Select *Delete this*
  ⇨ *Delete this* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select file ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉
- To Select *Delete all*
  ⇨ *Delete all* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Cancel Print Settings of Images

MENU ⇨ ***Data Folder*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***My Picture*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***microSD*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***DCIM*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a still image ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***DPOF setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***DPOF set One*** or ***DPOF set Choice*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select an image ⇨ ◉ (repeat to select another image) ⇨ ✉) ⇨ ***Print OFF*** or ***All Print OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Connectivity

Infrared.. 13-2

Getting Started.. 13-2

Transferring Data via Infrared........................... 13-3

Bluetooth® 13-5

About Bluetooth® 13-5

Adding a Bluetooth® Device 13-6

Connecting 13-6

Calling with Wireless Device............................. 13-7

Playing music and audio with Wireless Device... 13-7

Suspending Bluetooth® Connections................ 13-8

Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby 13-8

PC Connection... 13-9

USB Driver.. 13-9

Data Transfer.. 13-9

Setting USB Mode 13-9

Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC 13-9

Using Handset as Modem 13-10

Advanced Features 13-11

Bluetooth®... 13-11

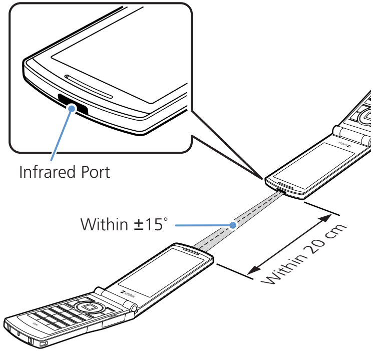
Getting Started

Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices. The following files are transferable via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Books
- Widgets
- PDF Files
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser)

Precautions

- File transfer may not start depending on receiving device status. Some settings or content may be lost depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.
- All the still images on handset are overwritten, even those set as Phone Book entry images, if handset receives all still images at once.
- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.

Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Transferring Data via Infrared

Sending One File

Send one file at a time.

1 Select a file ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Send Ir Data* ⇨ ●

2 Set the receiving device to receive data

3 Align Infrared Ports ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

Transfer starts.

Message appears when file transfer is complete.

■ To Cancel Transfer

⇨ ✉

Tip

- In a data list window, press ✉ to send a JPEG image via high-speed transmission.
- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

Receiving One File

1 MENU ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Receive Ir Data* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Receive* ⇨ ●

2 Align Infrared Ports

Transfer starts.

■ To Cancel Transfer

⇨ ✉

3 When file is received ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

File is saved to handset.

File is discarded if no operation is performed within 30 seconds of transfer.

Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

1 In a data list window/data details window ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Send All Ir Data* ⇨ ●

2 Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter authentication password

3 Set the receiving device to receive data

4 Align Infrared Ports ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

Transfer starts.

When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■ To Cancel Transfer

⇨ ✉

Note

- All file transfer is unavailable for still image, melody, video, My Pictogram, song, book and widget files.

Connectivity
13

Receiving All Files

1 MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Receive Ir Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Receive All*** ⇨ ◉

2 **Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter authentication password**

3 **Align Infrared Ports ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Transfer starts.

4 **When an overwrite confirmation appears ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉**

Transfer starts.

Message appears when files are saved to handset.

■ **To Cancel Transfer**

⇨ ✉

Note

- Existing handset files are overwritten (e.g. When all messages are transferred, existing messages, including protected messages are overwritten. When all Phone Book/Schedule entries are transferred, all data including secret data is overwritten).
- File transfer stops when maximum storable capacity is reached.

More Features

Customize

Phone Book

- Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

(▶ **P. 14-12)**

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Ir Transmission

(▶ **P. 14-28)**

Connectivity 13

About Bluetooth®

Transmit data by wireless connection between Bluetooth® compatible devices (wireless headset, handsfree device, audio device, etc.).
Handset Bluetooth® specifications are as follows.

Version	Bluetooth® standard Ver. 2.0 + EDR compliant
Profiles	HSP: Headset Profile HFP: Handsfree Profile A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (stereo, high quality) AVRCP Audio/Video Remote Control Profile

Precautions

- Handset is not guaranteed for connection/operation with all Bluetooth® devices.
- Connected Bluetooth® devices must be certified as Bluetooth® standard as designated by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on other party device characteristics/specifications, there may be inability to connect, incompatible operation/display methods, or inability to transmit data even if other party is Bluetooth® standard.
- The frequency band (2.4 GHz) used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other kinds of devices. Interference from other devices may result in decreased transmission speed/distance or disconnection.
- Static noise may occur depending on the connection device and environment during wireless/handsfree talk.
- TV audio is unavailable with Bluetooth® devices non-compliant with the copyright protection standard SCMS-T.

Handset Functions

Function	Description
Headset Profile	Wireless talk is available when connected to a wireless headset.
Handsfree Profile	Handsfree talk is available when connected to a car navi and using a microphone-speaker.
Audio Profile	Enjoy music/TV audio when connected to a wireless headset and audio device.

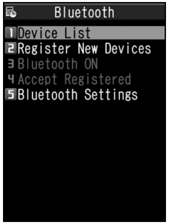
Note

- When connected to a wireless headset or handsfree compatible device, a ring tone sounds when ***Forward Ring Tone*** is set to ***OFF*** and ***Headset Usage Setting*** is set to ***Headset+speaker***.

Adding a Bluetooth® Device

Search and add a device.

1. MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Bluetooth*** ⇨ ◉


Bluetooth
1 Device List
2 Register New Devices
3 Bluetooth ON
4 Accept Registered
5 Bluetooth Settings

Bluetooth Menu

2. ***Register New Devices*** ⇨ ◉
   Handset searches for devices.
   Added device appears in Device List.

3. **Select device to add** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

■ When Passkey Required

⇨ Enter Bluetooth® passkey ⇨ ◉

Enter the same Bluetooth® passkey (4 to 16 characters) for both sending or receiving devices.

Receiving device must have passkey entered within 30 seconds after the sending device.

Enter the designated passkey for a handsfree device (other party).

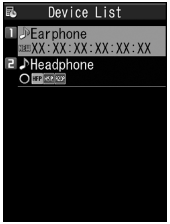
Tip

- When a Bluetooth® device is not added, search and add from ***Device List*** in Bluetooth menu.

Connecting

Connect to an added device.

1. **[Bluetooth Menu]** ⇨ ***Device List*** ⇨ ◉


Device List
1 Earphone
NEW XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
2 Headphone
○ HFP HSP A2DP

■ To Search for New Bluetooth® Device

⇨ ✉

2. **Select target device** ⇨ ◉

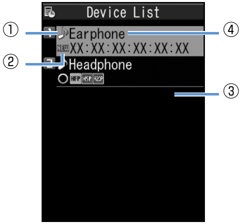
3. **Select service** ⇨ ◉
   ✱ flashes once connected.
   For a device capable of connecting to multiple services, a confirmation window will ask if you want to connect to another service.

■ To Discontinue a Connected Service

⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Device List

The type of added device and service are shown by indicators.



Earphone
XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
Headphone

Device List

①	Device Type[1] 💻 PC 📱 Phone ♪ AV device ᛒ Other
②	Status ○ Added NEW Not added (newly detected)
③	Services[2] HSP Headset HFP Handsfree A2DP Audio AV RCP Remote Control
④	Device Name Bluetooth® address appears for non-added devices.

1 An icon with a key mark appears for protected devices.

2 Service status appears as below.

Icon	Letters	Backgr.	Border	Status
HSP	gray	–	–	Connection history: No
HSP	white	–	gray	Connection history: Yes
HSP	white	–	white	Connection standby
HSP	black	green	white	Connected

Calling with Wireless Device

Connect wireless headsets or handsfree devices.

1 Connect to target device

2 Make/receive call with device

Talk switches each time you press and hold ✎

Playing music and audio with Wireless Device

Connect to a device with audio device to play Music Player music and TV audio.

1 Connect to target device

2 Play music, TV or etc.

Tip

- To adjust volume, use volume control on Bluetooth® device.
- Connecting once to an audio device with audio service is stored as a connection history. When handset's Bluetooth® function is active (***Bluetooth ON***), audio devices with a connection history are automatically connected through audio service when playing music or TV.

Suspending Bluetooth® Connections

Suspend all Bluetooth® functions (connected or on standby) and disable Bluetooth®.

1 **[Bluetooth Menu]** ⇨ ***Bluetooth OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Tip

- To activate Bluetooth®:
  [Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ *Bluetooth ON* ⇨ ◉

Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby

Set standby status for all added devices.

1 **[Bluetooth Menu]** ⇨ ***Accept Registered*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***Accept All*** ⇨ ◉

■ **To Set Individually**

⇨ ***Separate Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select service ⇨ ✉

Services with checked boxes enter Connection Standby.

■ **To Release all Connection Standby**

⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ◉

More Features

Advanced

Bluetooth®

- Protect Added Device
- Change Name of Added Device
- Delete Added Device
- Open Information for Added Device

(▶ P. 13-11)

Customize

Bluetooth®

- Set Detection Time for Device
- Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device
- Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device
- Check Handset Bluetooth® Information

(▶ P. 14-29)

PC Connection

Connect handset to a PC via USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately.

Function	Description
Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 13-9).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 13-9).
MTP Mode	Use Windows Media® Player to save music data to memory card (P. 9-4).

* USB driver must be installed in advance.

USB Driver

Install USB Driver to connect handset to a PC. Download USB Driver from the following site (Japanese).
http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/

Data Transfer

Use SoftBank Utility Software to transfer data between handset and a PC. Download SoftBank Utility Software from the following site (Japanese).
http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/

- Install USB Driver before using SoftBank Utility Software.

Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***External Connection*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***USB Mode Setting*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***Communication Mode*** **or** ***microSD Mode*** ⇨ ◉

Set to ***Communication Mode*** for transferring data or using handset as a modem (packet transmission).
Set to ***microSD Mode*** for accessing memory card data from a PC.

Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set *USB Mode Setting* to *microSD Mode* in advance.

1 Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

2 When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.

Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

Bluetooth®

Start Here

【Device List】 ....P. 13-7

Protect Added Device

【Device List】 ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Protection Setting*** ⇨ ◉

If already protected, select ***Protection Setting*** to cancel protection.

Change Name of Added Device

【Device List】 ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Change Device Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter device name ⇨ ◉

Delete Added Device

【Device List】 ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Open Information for Added Device

【Device List】 ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Description*** ⇨ ◉

Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds 14-2
Phone Book & Calls 14-12
Mail 14-16
Internet 14-19
TV 14-21
Camera 14-23
Player & S! Appli 14-24
Entertainment 14-25
Other Settings 14-27

Clock

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Clock*** ⇨ ◉

Hide Clock	⇨ ***Clock Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Clock Size	⇨ ***Clock Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉
Clock Color	⇨ ***Clock Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Color*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Black*** or ***White*** ⇨ ◉
Set Auto Time Adjustment	⇨ ***Set Main Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto Time Adjust*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a time zone ⇨ ◉ • Press ✉ to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field. • If auto time adjustment is still not performed, open Yahoo! Keitai top page again and perform *Reload* before returning to Standby.
Manually Adjust Time	⇨ ***Set Main Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto Time Adjust*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Manual(Date Time Set)*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a time zone ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter date and time ⇨ ◉
Summer Time	⇨ ***Set Main Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Summer Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉
Time Zone (Sub Clock)	⇨ ***Set Sub Clock*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display Method*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Always*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a time zone ⇨ ◉
Hide Sub Clock	⇨ ***Set Sub Clock*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display Method*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	⇨ ***Set Sub Clock*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Summer Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉
Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)	⇨ ***Set Sub Clock*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Area Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ◉

Alarm

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Clock*** ⇨ ◉

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	⇨ ***Alarm Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Operation Preferred*** or ***Alarm Preferred*** ⇨ ◉
Change Alarm Tone	⇨ ***Clock Alarm Tone Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an alarm tone

Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off*	MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Clock* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Auto Power ON* or *Auto Power OFF* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *ON* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *1 Time* or *Daily* ⇨ ◉

* When near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, or in areas where handset use is forbidden (aboard aircraft, in hospitals, etc.), set *Auto Power ON* to *OFF* and turn handset power off.

Style Mode Settings

Start Here MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Style Mode Setting* ⇨ ◉

Set Display Design Collectively	⇨ Select a style ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ◉)
Check Default Style Mode Settings	⇨ Select a style ⇨ ✉ • Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing ✉.
Edit Title of a Style	⇨ Select a style ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Edit Title* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉
Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite	⇨ *お気に入り* (Favorites) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Take Setting Info* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉ • The current style mode settings can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed.
Change Each Item for Favorites	⇨ *お気に入り* (Favorites) ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an image
Clear All Favorite Settings	⇨ *お気に入り* (Favorites) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ *Reset Setting Info* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ◉

Display Settings

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ◉

Wallpaper	⇨ *Display Setting* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Stand-by Display* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *My Picture* or *Videos* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an image/video (⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ◉ (twice))
Show Calendar in Standby	⇨ *Display Setting* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Stand-by Display* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Calendar* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Background* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an image ⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ◉ (twice) • Select *No Background* if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar. • Press ◉, use ⇕ to select the calendar and press ◉ to operate it. Use ⇕ to switch to the previous/next month. Press ◉ to activate Schedule.

Set Random Display of Images in Standby	⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Stand-by Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Random Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ◉ • Images switch at random each time handset is opened or returns to Standby.
Set a Wake-up Image	⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Wake-up Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***My Picture*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an image
Set a Wake-up Message	⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Wake-up Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Message*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter message ⇨ ◉
Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dialing***, ***Video Call Dialing*** or ***Mail Sending*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an image
Set an Incoming Call, Message Image or Video	⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Calling***, ***Video Call Calling*** or ***Mail Receiving*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Calling Disp.*** or ***Select Receiving Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***My Picture*** or ***Videos*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Set an image/video
Set an Image for New Messages or Received Result Window	⇨ ***Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Retrieve New*** or ***Mail Rec'd Result*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set an image
Display Color Scheme	⇨ ***Display Design*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Color Theme*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉

Set a Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Pattern	⇨ ***Display Design*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Icon Pattern*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Battery Icon*** or ***Antenna Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉
Set Softkey Color	⇨ ***Display Design*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Soft Key*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉
Set Font Type	⇨ ***Font*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Font Type*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Gothic*** or ***Ming-cho*** ⇨ ◉ • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Thickness	⇨ ***Font*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Thickness*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Thin*** or ***Bold*** ⇨ ◉ • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Sizes Collectively	⇨ ***Font*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Character Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Standard*** or ***X-large*** ⇨ ◉ • Items settable with *Separate Setting* for *Character Size* can be set collectively. • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Size for Each Function Window	⇨ ***Font*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Character Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Separate Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a window ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings. • In PC Site Browser, only available in Small Screen view.

Interface Language	⇨ *言語選択* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *日本語* or ***English*** ⇨ ◉ • To change interface language from Japanese to English: ⇨ MENU ⇨ *設定* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *ディスプレイ* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *Language* ⇨ ◉ ⇨ *English* ⇨ ◉
Set Image List View	⇨ ***Viewer Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Picture*** or ***Title*** ⇨ ◉
Set Auto-change Screen	⇨ ***Auto-change Screen*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ • Press ✉ to do training in tilting handset.
Guard from Prying Eyes	⇨ ***Privacy Angle*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • Alternatively, press and hold 8 in Standby to toggle Privacy Angle on and off. The other party may hear a short beep when this operation is performed during a call. • When *Privacy Angle* is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower.
Show Information of Messages Received While Watching TV	⇨ ***Quick Info Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display Sender*** or ***Display Sender/Subject*** ⇨ ◉
Set 3D Effect When Returning to Standby	⇨ ***Screen Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉

Display Quality	⇨ ***Image Display Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Normal***, ***Vivid*** or ***Dynamic*** ⇨ ◉ • The *Visual Image Effect* setting in *TV Effect* has preference for TV display quality. • A preview image for each mode appears during selection in *Image Display Mode* to check the effect.

Backlight

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Backlight*** ⇨ ◉

Set Backlight & Power Saving	⇨ ***Lighting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select time Backlight is lit ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter a time before the Power Saver Mode is activated) • Press and hold 5 to toggle TV Power Saving on/off. • When the Power Saver Mode is activated, nothing appears in Standby. Pressing any key cancels the Power Saver Mode.
Set Backlight during Charging	⇨ ***Charging*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Standard*** or ***All Time ON*** ⇨ ◉
Set Brightness of Backlight	⇨ ***Brightness*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a Level ⇨ ◉ • Set *Brightness* to *Level 6* to use Display with the maximum brightness. Backlight is *Level 4* by default. A higher setting reduces battery life.

Desktop Icons

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ◉

Set Desktop Theme	⇨ ***Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • Press ✉ to see details of the selected theme.
Change Icon Design of a Theme	⇨ ***Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***CHG Icon Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Icon Image*** or ***Default Icon Image*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Set and icon)
Change Order of Icons of a Theme	⇨ ***Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ◉
Copy Icons to Another Theme	⇨ ***Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Copy*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Copy This***, ***Copy Selected*** or ***Copy All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination theme ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select icons ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉) • When *Copy Selected* or *Copy All* is selected, select *YES* and press ◉ at the end of the procedure.
Move Icons to Another Theme	⇨ ***Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Move*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Move This***, ***Move Selected*** or ***Move All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a destination theme ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select icons ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉) ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Delete Icons of a Theme	⇨ ***Desktop Icon*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select an icon ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete This***, ***Delete selected*** or ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Select icons ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉) ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation	⇨ ***3D Display Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

Menu Display Settings

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Menu Display Set*** ⇨ ◉

List View and Details View	⇨ ***Menu Display*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***List*** or ***Detail*** ⇨ ◉ • Select View for menus from MENU ⇨ *Settings* ⇨ ◉.
Set Main Menu Theme	⇨ ***Theme*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a theme ⇨ ◉

Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	⇨ ***Theme*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Original Theme*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a menu item ⇨ ● ⇨ Set an image • Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image. • Press ✉ to check current setting.
Change Background (Original Theme)	⇨ ***Theme*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Original Theme*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Background Image*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Set an image • Change Main Menu background to any preferred image. • Press ✉ to check current setting.
Reset Original Theme Settings	⇨ ***Theme*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Original Theme*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a menu item ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Reset*** or ***All reset*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ● • Only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.
Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory	⇨ ***Memory Focus*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ●

Start Here [MENU] ⇨ [Y!]

Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	⇨ ***<Not Recorded>*** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select a function ⇨ ● (⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●)
Change Order of Original Menu Items	⇨ Select an item ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Sort*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ●
Cancel Original Menu Items	⇨ Select an item ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Release*** or ***Release All*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●
Reset Original Menu	⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Reset Org. Menu*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●

Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector	[MENU] ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Icons Setting*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ● • The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing ● in Standby. Use ✣ to select an indicators and press ● to access the corresponding function.

Indicator Display

Start Here [MENU] ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Display*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Indicator Display*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ●

Set Only Clock to Appear	⇨ ***Disp. Clock Only*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉ • Messages (incoming messages, etc.) and animation (alarm, etc.) appear when set to *OFF*.
Set Clock Pattern	⇨ ***Clock Type*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

Set Messages to Appear	⇨ ***Called***, ***Mail*** or ***Connection*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉
Set Clock to Appear at Specified Time	⇨ ***Time Signal*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***30 Minutes*** or ***60 Minutes*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set Color*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set Pattern*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉
Set Viewable Time	⇨ ***Display Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***15 Seconds***, ***30 Seconds*** or ***60 Seconds*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉

Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Incoming Call*** ⇨ ◉

Adjust Ringtone Volume	⇨ ***Ring Volume*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ◌ to adjust volume ⇨ ◉ • When ***Step*** is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When ***Silent*** is set, no ringtone sounds.
Set a Ringtone	⇨ ***Select Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a ringtone
Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones	⇨ ***Select Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Random Melody*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ • Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.
Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone	⇨ ***Mail Ring Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter ringing duration • When ***OFF*** is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.
Set Vibration*	⇨ ***Vibrator*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉ • When ***Melody Linkage*** is set, handset vibrates to the melody set as ringtone.
Set Illumination Color	⇨ ***Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set Color*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉
Set Illumination Pattern	⇨ ***Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set Pattern*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉ • Even when ***Melody Linkage*** is set, Illumination may not flash to the melody depending on the set ringtone.

* When ***Vibrator*** is not set to ***OFF***, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.

Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	⇨ ***Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Missed Info*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	⇨ ***Select Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone, Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Calling Disp.*** or ***Select Receiving Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***My Picture*** or ***Videos*** ⇨ ◉) ⇨ Set an image/video
Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/ Messages	⇨ ***Disp. Phone Book Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Incoming Call*** ⇨ ◉

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key	⇨ ***Answer Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Any Key Answer*** ⇨ ◉ • Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from ✆, ◉, 0 - 9, ✱, ✉, Y!, マナー and ✥. The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.
Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key	⇨ ***Answer Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Quick Silent*** ⇨ ◉ • Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from 0 - 9, ✱, ✉ (for voice calls only), Y!, マナー and ✥ or by opening handset.

Manner Mode

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Incoming Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Manner Mode Setting*** ⇨ ◉

Set Manner Mode Type	⇨ ***Manner Mode Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a Manner Mode ⇨ ◉ • When ***Super Silent*** is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.
Configure Original Manner Mode	⇨ ***Manner Mode Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Original*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set each item ⇨ ✉
Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start	⇨ ***Manner Start Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Start Time Set1*** or ***Start Time Set2*** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ⏱ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ↻ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***1 Time, Daily*** (D) or ***Select Day*** (W) ⇨ ◉ ⇨ (Select day ⇨ ✉) ⇨ ✉
Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release	⇨ ***Manner Release Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Release Time Set1*** or ***Release Time Set2*** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ⏱ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter time ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ↻ ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***1 Time, Daily*** (D) or ***Select Day*** (W) ⇨ ◉ ⇨ (Select day ⇨ ✉) ⇨ ✉
Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off	⇨ ***Manner Start Time*** or ***Manner Release Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ Y! • Press Y! to toggle on/off. Settings (e.g., time) are not updated. • To cancel all settings at once: ⇨ ⌸ ⇨ ***Release All*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Checking Call Logs

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Incoming Call*** ⇨ ◉

Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When ▼ Pressed)	⇨ ***Info Notice Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • Two short beeps sound twice when there are missed calls, and three short beeps sound when there are none.
Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows	⇨ ***Disp. Call/Receive No.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉ • Press ✉ to toggle the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors. • To reset the color settings, press Y!.

Sounds

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Key Sound Off	⇨ ***Keypad Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones	⇨ ***Charge Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉
Set Handset Open/Close Sound	⇨ ***Open-close Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Open Sound*** or ***Close Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Melody*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a sound ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Ring Time*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select time sound emitted ⇨ ◉ • Slide and close sounds not emitted when set *OFF*.

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Announce*** ⇨ ◉

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message	⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Record sound (for about 15 seconds) • Press ◉ to stop recording.
Play Recorded Sound	⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ ◉
Delete Recorded Sound	⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ ↰ ⇨ ***Erase*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Earphone-Microphone

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Audio Output	⇨ ***External Connection*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Headset Usage Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Headset+speaker*** or ***Headset Only*** ⇨ ◉

Microphone Setting	⇨ ***External Connection*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Headset Mic. Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Built-in Microphone*** or ***Headset Microphone*** ⇨ ◉
Answer Calls Automatically	⇨ ***External Connection*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto Answer Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone*** or ***Video Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter ring time
Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	⇨ ***Dialing*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Headset SW to Dial*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Voice Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ◉

Phone Book & Calls

Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-21) ⇨ Select a search method ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***OK*** ⇨ ◉ • To cancel the preferred search method, press CLEAR in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with ★, and then press ✉.
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] (P. 2-21) ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Group Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a group ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit group name ⇨ ◉ • The name remains the same only for *No Group*.
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Forwarding Image*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Addressbook Back-up*** ⇨ ◉

Set Auto Synchronize	⇨ ***Auto Sync Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON/OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select synchronize timing ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Set synchronize cycle and day) ⇨ Select synchronize type ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ (twice)
Set Auto Synchronize Off	⇨ ***Auto Sync Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON/OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Check Auto Synchronize Settings	⇨ ***Auto Sync Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Confirm Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Outgoing Calls

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dialing*** ⇨ ◉

Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	⇨ ***Prefix Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter name ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter prefix numbers ⇨ ◉
Save Touch Tones	⇨ ***Pause Dial*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter touch tone numbers ⇨ ◉ • Press and hold ✳ to enter "p" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "✳" as Sub Address	⇨ ***Sub-address Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

International Calls

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Dialing*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Int'l Dial Assistance*** ⇨ ◉

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	⇨ ***Auto Int'l Call Set.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a country code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an international access code ⇨ ◉ • When *OFF* is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold 0. • Select an international access code you set in *IDD Prefix Setting*.
Change a Country Code	⇨ ***Country Code Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter country name ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter country code ⇨ ◉
Save an International Access Code	⇨ ***IDD Prefix Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter international access name ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter international access code ⇨ ◉

Call Settings

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Talk*** ⇨ ◉

Set Reconnection Tone	⇨ ***Reconnect Signal*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***High Tone*** or ***Low Tone*** ⇨ ◉
Set Noise Reduction	⇨ ***Noise Reduction*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉
Set Weak Signal Alarm	⇨ ***Quality Alarm*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***High Tone*** or ***Low Tone*** ⇨ ◉ • Calls may be disconnected without sounding the alarm when signal suddenly becomes too weak.
Set Clarity of Other Party Voice	⇨ ***Hyper Clear Voice*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***High***, ***Low*** and ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Automatically Record During Voice Call	⇨ ***Auto Voice Memo*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • Record latest 60 seconds of call (two recordings).
Change Color of Illumination While Calling	⇨ ***Illumination in talk*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉
Set a Hold Message	⇨ ***Set Hold Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***On Hold Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a hold tone ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ◉)
Set Closing Sound Off	⇨ ***Setting when folded*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***No Tone*** ⇨ ◉
End Call By Closing Handset	⇨ ***Setting when folded*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***End the Call*** ⇨ ◉

Call Costs

Start Here MENU ➪ ***Settings*** ➪ ● ➪ ***Call Time/Charge*** ➪ ●

Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost	➪ ***Auto Reset Total Cost*** ➪ ● ➪ Enter Security Code ➪ ● ➪ ***Auto Reset*** ➪ ● ➪ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ➪ ● (➪ Enter PIN2 ➪ ●) • When *ON* is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.
Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit*	➪ ***Set Max Cost Limit*** ➪ ● ➪ Enter Security Code ➪ ● ➪ ¥ ➪ ● ➪ Enter cost limit ➪ ● ➪ 🔔 ➪ ● ➪ ***ON*** ➪ ● ➪ ♪ ➪ ● ➪ Set alarm tone ➪ ♪ ➪ ● ➪ ◎ to adjust volume ➪ ● ➪ ✉ ➪ Enter PIN2 ➪ ● • A call ends automatically and ☎ appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit. • When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: ➪ *Set Max Cost Limit* ➪ ● ➪ Enter Security Code ➪ ● ➪ ¥ ➪ ● (twice) ➪ ✉ ➪ Enter PIN2 ➪ ●

* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.

Video Calls

Start Here MENU ➪ ***Settings*** ➪ ● ➪ ***Video Call*** ➪ ●

Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls	➪ ***Select Image*** ➪ ● ➪ Select an item ➪ ● ➪ ***Pre-installed*** or ***Original*** ➪ ● • To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ➪ *Original* ➪ ✉ ➪ *Change Setting* ➪ ● ➪ Set an image
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	➪ ***Auto Redial as Voice*** ➪ ● ➪ ***ON*** ➪ ●
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	➪ ***Display Setting*** ➪ ● ➪ ***Main Display*** ➪ ● ➪ ***Other Side*** or ***My Side*** ➪ ●
Reverse Front Camera Image	➪ ***Display Setting*** ➪ ● ➪ ***Front Camera Reverse*** ➪ ● ➪ ***ON*** ➪ ●
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	➪ ***Hands-free Switch*** ➪ ● ➪ ***ON*** ➪ ●

Global Roaming

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Int'l Roaming Set*** ⇨ ◉

Set Operator	⇨ ***NW Search Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Manual*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an operator ⇨ ◉ • When *Auto* is set, an available operator is set automatically. • Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.
Search Available Operator	⇨ ***NW Search Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Network Re-search*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an operator ⇨ ◉ • Available when *NW Search Mode* is set to *Manual*.
Set Priority for Operators	⇨ ***PLMN Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an operator ⇨ ☐ ⇨ ***Change Priority*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a position on the priority list ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • When *Auto* or *Network Re-search* is set under *NW Search Mode*, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.
Change Network	⇨ ***Select Network*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***AUTO***, ***3G*** or ***GSM/GPRS*** ⇨ ◉ • Set to *AUTO* or network used in current location.
Show Operator Name While Roaming	⇨ ***Display Operator Name*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display ON*** ⇨ ◉

S! Mail Settings

Start Here ✉ ⇨ ***Mail Setting*** ⇨ ◉

Edit Header/ Signature	⇨ ***Header/Signature*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Edit Header*** or ***Edit Signature*** ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Edit header/signature ⇨ ✉
Insert Header/ Signature Automatically	⇨ ***Header/Signature*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Insert Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Header*** or ***Signature*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉
Set to Check Delivery	⇨ ***S! Mail Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delivery Report*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • After a recipient receives your S! Mail, a message titled *S! Mail Report* is sent to your Softbank handset.

SMS Settings

Start Here ✉ ⇨ ***Mail Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***SMS Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set to Check Delivery	⇨ ***SMS Report Request*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • After a recipient receives your SMS message, a message titled *SMS Report* is sent to your Softbank handset.
Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages	⇨ ***SMS Validity Period*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a period ⇨ ◉ • When *None* is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.
Set SMS Input Language	⇨ ***SMS Input Character*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Japanese (70char.)*** or ***English (160char.)*** ⇨ ◉

Incoming Message Settings

Start Here ✉ ⇨ ***Mail Setting*** ⇨ ◉

Customize E-mail Address	⇨ ***Custom Mail Address*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Follow onscreen instructions
Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	⇨ ***Emotion/Keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Take the checkmark off from ***Disp. Emotion*** ⇨ ✉
Show Keyword Indicators	⇨ ***Emotion/Keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Put a checkmark to ***Disp. Keyword*** ⇨ Select a keyword entry field ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter keyword ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ • When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator 🔍1 - 🔍3 appears. • In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-6) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.

Delete Keywords	⇨ ***Emotion/Keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a keyword ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Delete Keyword*** or ***Delete All Keyword*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ✉ • To delete all keywords, take the checkmark off from *Keyword Info*.
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	⇨ ***Receiving Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Alarm Preferred*** or ***Operation Preferred*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages	⇨ ***Read Out Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Read Out Received Mail*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ • Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.
Set Voice to Read Out Messages	⇨ ***Read Out Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Select Voice*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a voice type ⇨ ◉ • Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.
Set Manual Receive	⇨ ***S! Mail Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Message Download*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Manual*** ⇨ ◉ • The entire text is receivable by user operation.

Reply Settings

Change Quotation Marks	✉ ⇨ ***Mail Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Header/Signature*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Edit Quotation Marks*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit quotation mark ⇨ ◉

Message View Settings & Others

Start Here ✉ ⇨ ***Mail Setting*** ⇨ ◉

Set Message List View	⇨ ***Mail List Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***2 Lines***, ***1 Line*** or ***1 Line+Body*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Subject***, ***Name*** or ***Address*** ⇨ ◉
Play Attached Melodies Automatically	⇨ ***Start Attachment (auto)*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • Automatic play only for received mail.
Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll	⇨ ***Scroll*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***1 Line***, ***3 Lines*** or ***5 Lines*** ⇨ ◉
Set Font Size of Text	⇨ ***Font Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉
Check Mail Settings	⇨ ***Check Settings*** ⇨ ◉
Reset Mail Settings	⇨ ***Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

SMS Server Settings

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Connection Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***SMS Center Selection*** ⇨ ◉

Change SMS Center Address	⇨ ***819066519300*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter SMS Center address ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***International*** or ***Unknown*** ⇨ ◉ • Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	⇨ ***Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Internet

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai **Press and hold** Y! ⇨ ***Browser Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Start Here for PC Site Browser **Press and hold** Y! ⇨ ***PC Site Browser*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***PC Site Brw. Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	⇨ ***Scroll*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Whole Page, Half Page*** or ***Single Line*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies	⇨ ***Downloads*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Display Images*** or ***Play Sounds*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Clear Cache	⇨ ***Memory Manager*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete Cache*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Delete Cookies	⇨ ***Memory Manager*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete Cookies*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Initialize Memory Status of Internet	⇨ ***Initialized Browser*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Manufacture Number*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Send Referer	⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Send Referer*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Enable/Disable Cookies	⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Cookie Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an option ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	⇨ ***Security*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Script Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an option ⇨ ◉
Check Internet Settings	⇨ ***Check Settings*** or ***Check PC Site Brw. Set*** ⇨ ◉
Reset Internet Settings	⇨ ***Reset*** or ***Reset PC Site Brw. Set*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here **Press and hold** Y! ⇨ ***Browser Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Font Size	⇨ ***Font Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	⇨ ***Flash Sound Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

PC Site Browser

Start Here Press and hold Y! ⇨ ***PC Site Browser*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***PC Site Brw. Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	⇨ ***Warning Messages*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Page Layout	⇨ ***Display Mode Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***PC Screen*** or ***Small Screen*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉

Channel List

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Channel List*** ⇨ ◉

Change Title of Channel List	⇨ Select a channel list ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Edit Title*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ◉
Delete a Channel List	⇨ Select a channel list ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Delete This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	⇨ Select a channel list ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Remote Control No.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a remote control number ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a channel ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Repeat the same step ⇨ ✉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Delete a Channel	⇨ Select a channel list ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Select a channel ⇨ ⎘ ⇨ ***Delete This*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • Delete a channel from any channel list except for the currently used list.

Image & Sound

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***User Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Subtitle Display	⇨ ***Subtitles*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON (Wide:Bottom)***, ***ON (Wide:Top)*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	⇨ ***Icon Always Show*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	⇨ ***TV Power Saving*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • Following these steps when *TV Power Saving* is on will cancel ***TV Power Saving***.
Set Sound On While Handset Closed	⇨ ***TV Sound While Closed*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉ • When set to *ON* and handset is closed, a page connected from data broadcast automatically updates. Packet transmission fees apply.
Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV	⇨ ***Display Light*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Constant Light*** ⇨ ◉ • *TV Power Saving* must be off to set *Display Light*.
Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV	⇨ ***Display Light*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Lighting Duration*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter lighting time • *TV Power Saving* must be off to set *Display Light*.
Set Sound Effects	⇨ ***TV Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Sound Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an effect ⇨ ◉

Set Visual Image Effects	⇨ ***TV Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Visual Image Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an effect ⇨ ◉
Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)	⇨ ***Time Shift Setup*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Auto ON*** or ***Auto OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Data Broadcasts

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***User Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Data BC Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	⇨ ***Set Image Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	⇨ ***Sound Effect*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Show Confirmation Window Again	⇨ ***Reset Disp. Set.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • Once you select *YES(By default)* in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.

Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***User Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Rec. While Low Battery*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Other Settings

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***TV*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***User Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Check TV Settings	⇨ ***Check TV Settings*** ⇨ ◉
Reset Channel Settings	⇨ ***Reset Channel Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	⇨ ***Reset Storage Area*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an affiliated station ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Delete This*** or ***Delete All*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉) ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Reset TV Settings	⇨ ***Reset TV Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Camera/Video Settings

Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Shutter Sound*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a shutter sound ⇨ ◉
Set Level of Smile for Smile Mode	[Smile Mode Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Camera Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Smile Level*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a level ⇨ ◉
Set Display for Landscape View Shooting	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Icon Always Show*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ • Below icons do not appear if set to *OFF*. ●Photo Viewfinder Focus Frame, Auto Timer, Storage Capacity ●For Video Viewfinder or Shooting window Auto Timer, Storage Capacity, Recording Status, Recording Time (remaining)
Set Interval for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Interval/Number*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Shot Interval*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***0.5 Seconds***, ***1.0 Seconds*** or ***2.0 Seconds*** ⇨ ◉ • *Shot Interval* is available when *CHG Camera-mode* (P. 7-6) is set to *A-Continuous Mode*.
Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Interval/Number*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Shot Number*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Shot Number ⇨ ◉

File Storage

Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images/Videos	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ⇨ ▣ ⇨ ***Select to Save*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Phone*** or ***microSD*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ◉ • To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.

Player & S! Appli

Playback Window

Change Design of Playback Window	[Music Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Action Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Change Skin*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a design ⇨ ◉
Set Image Display Size	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Action Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set Image Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Normal*** or ***Fit in Display*** ⇨ ◉

When Running S! Appli

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Sound Volume	⇨ ***Sound/Vib Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Volume*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ◎ to adjust volume ⇨ ◉
Set Vibration	⇨ ***Sound/Vib Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Vibration*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Backlight	⇨ ***Backlight Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Switch ON/OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Always ON***, ***Always OFF*** or ***Link To Phone Set.*** ⇨ ◉
Set Blinking of Backlight	⇨ ***Backlight Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Blink*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Appli List*** ⇨ ◉

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Security Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Net Access*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***All Permit***, ***Prompt at 1st only***, ***Prompt each time*** or ***Disable*** ⇨ ◉
Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Security Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Write/Del User Data*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***All Permit***, ***Prompt at 1st only***, ***Prompt each time*** or ***Disable*** ⇨ ◉
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Security Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Reset Security Set.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

S! Appli

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Reset S! Appli Settings	⇨ ***Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Set to Default*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Delete All S! Appli	⇨ ***Reset*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Delete All S! App*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉

Mobile Widget

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Mobile Widget*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Check Auto Synchronize Settings	⇨ ***Auto Refresh*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad	⇨ ***Auto Roaming*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page	⇨ ***Delete Content*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a Desktop page ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • All Widgets in selected Desktop page are deleted.
Set Whether to Use Cookies	⇨ ***Cookies*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Delete Cookies	⇨ ***Delete Cookies*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Use Mobile Widget	⇨ ***Standby Disp. Set.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

S! Quick News

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Quick News*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News	⇨ ***Auto Refresh*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select update interval, ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ (twice)
Hide S! Quick News in Standby	⇨ ***Standby Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Standby Disp. Set.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	⇨ ***Standby Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Speed Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Fast***, ***Normal*** or ***Slow*** ⇨ ◉ (twice)
Set Information to appear in S! Quick News	⇨ ***Standby Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Unread & Read Set.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Unread Only*** or ***Unread & Read*** ⇨ ◉ (twice)
Hide S! Quick News Images	⇨ ***Set Image Disp.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ (twice)
Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents	⇨ ***Del. Quick News*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ (twice) ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ (three times)

S! Info Channel

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Info Ch./Weather*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	⇨ ***S! Information Notif.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Font Size for Web Pages	⇨ ***Font Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select font size ⇨ ◉

Weather Indicators

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Entertainment*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***S! Info Ch./Weather*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Weather Indicator*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information	⇨ ***Weather Update*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ (⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉)
Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby	⇨ ***Standby Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	⇨ ***Weather Notif.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Text Entry

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Character Input Set*** ⇨ ◉

Set Text Input Method	⇨ ***Input Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select an input method ⇨ ◉
Set Word Prediction	⇨ ***Prediction*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	⇨ ***T9 Change Mode*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***T9 Kanji Change Mode*** or ***T9 Kana Change Mode*** ⇨ ◉
Clear Learning History	⇨ ***Clear Learned*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***T9/Expect Words/Pic.*** or ***Kana/Kanji Change/Face*** ⇨ ◉
Change Font Size	⇨ ***CHG Input Size*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ◉
Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode	⇨ ***Auto Cursor*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Fast***, ***Normal***, ***Slow*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Shortcut Key

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key	⇨ ***Shortcut-key Setting*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a function ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • Alternatively, press and hold ⊡ in Standby to set *Shortcut-key Setting*. • To return to original settings, press ⊡, select *Reset Shortcut-Key,* and press ◉.

Closed Illumination

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Closed Illum.*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

Set Flashing Color for Handset Close	⇨ ***Set Color*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉
Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close	⇨ ***Set Pattern*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ◉

Key Illumination

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Key Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** ⇨ ◉

Set Illumination for Power On/Off	⇨ ***Power ON*** or ***Power OFF*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls	⇨ ***Incoming Call*** or ***Dialing*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Call Start	⇨ ***Talking Start*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Sending/Receiving Messages	⇨ ***Mail Receiving*** or ***Mail Sending*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail	⇨ ***Emotion*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Always, Unread Mail Only*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Illumination for Alarm Notification	⇨ ***Alarm*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Snooze Notification	⇨ ***Snooze*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Illumination for Ir/IC Transmission	⇨ ***Ir/IC Exchanging*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉
Set Illumination for Missed Call or New Message	⇨ ***Missed Call*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a pattern
Set Illumination for When Handset Opens	⇨ ***Open*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Special Events	⇨ ***Event*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Key Backlight

Set Key Backlight Color	MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Key Backlight*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ◉

Osaifu-Keitai®

Set Illumination for IC Card	MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***IC Card Illumination*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉

Delete all Lifestyle-Appli	MENU ⇨ ***S! Appli*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Reset*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Delete All LifeApp*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ●
Set Whether to Enable Opening from Reader/Writer	MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Interface Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Browser*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ●

S! GPS Navi

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***S! GPS Navi*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***NAVI Settings*** ⇨ ●

Set Default Navi Appli	⇨ ***Map Setting*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Select Navi Appli*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a Navi Appli ⇨ ●
Begin Positioning Before/After Activating Map	⇨ ***Map Setting*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Map Activate Setting*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***After Positioning*** or ***Before Positioning*** ⇨ ●
Save Map URL	⇨ ***Map URL Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***<Not Recorded>*** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Map URL Name*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter URL name ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Map URL*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter URL ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉
Edit URL Name	⇨ ***Map URL Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a map URL ⇨ ✉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ Select name ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter name ⇨ ● ⇨ Select URL ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit URL ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉ • The map URL set by default cannot be edited.
Delete Map URL	⇨ ***Map URL Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a map URL ⇨ ⤴ ⇨ ***Delete*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ● • The map URL set by default cannot be deleted.
Set Map URL	⇨ ***Map URL Settings*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a map URL ⇨ ●
Set Location Information Send Method	⇨ ***Send Location Info*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Confirm***, ***Send*** or ***Not Send*** ⇨ ●

Bluetooth®

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Tools*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Bluetooth*** ⇨ ● ⇨ ***Bluetooth Settings*** ⇨ ●

Set Detection Time for Device	⇨ ***Time-out to Search*** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter search time

Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device	⇨ ***Forward Ring Tone*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ⇨ ◉ • Ring tone will also sound from handset if *Headset Usage Setting* is set to *Headset+speaker* and *Forward Ring Tone* is set to *OFF*.
Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device	⇨ ***Dial From Other Device*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Valid*** or ***Invalid*** ⇨ ◉
Check Handset Bluetooth® Information	⇨ ***Bluetooth Info*** ⇨ ◉ • Press ✉ to change name of added device.

Resetting Handset

Start Here MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉

Reset All Settings to Default	⇨ ***Reset Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉
Initialize Handset to Default Status	⇨ ***Initialize*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***YES*** ⇨ ◉ • When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts. • When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored. • Your Security Code will also be reset to default.

Appendix

Multitask Combinations **15-2**
Software Update **15-4**
Updating Software.. 15-4
Troubleshooting **15-6**
Text Entry Key Assignments.................... **15-9**
In 5-touch Mode... 15-9
In 2-touch Mode... 15-10
In T9 Input Mode.. 15-11
Kuten Code List...................................... **15-12**
Weather Indicators **15-18**
Menu List... **15-19**
Specifications **15-35**
Main Specifications 15-35
Handset Materials 15-36
Maximum Number of Storable Items............. 15-37
Memory Card Folders & Files 15-38
Index... **15-40**
Warranty & After Sales Service **15-52**
Warranty... 15-52
After Sales Service 15-52
Customer Service **15-53**

Multitask Combinations

The following table shows combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously to multitask.

- The following indications may not apply depending on the function status and combination.

Function / Currently Active Function		Mail	Yahoo! Keitai	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group
		✉	Y!	🎮	🔧	▶	🗓	📖	👤	🗓	🖥	🎧		
Mail	✉	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Mail Group
Yahoo! Keitai	Y!	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Yahoo! Keitai Group
S! Appli	🎮	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	S! Appli Group
Settings/Optional Services	🔧	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Settings Group
Data Folder	▶	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	Data Folder
Tools	🗓	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	Tools Group
Phone Book	📖	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	
Own Data	👤	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	
Camera	🗓	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	

Multitask Combinations

Function / Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo! Keitai	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group
TV	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	TV & Music Group
Music	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	
During a Voice Call	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	Voice Call
During a Video Call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	Video Call
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	External Connection

○ : Can be activated.
× : Cannot be activated.

Software Update

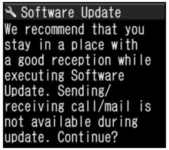
Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check or update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. Wait for the software update to finish before using handset.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Other handset functions are available once the software update is completed.
- Data saved on handset is retained when you update software. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.
- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-53).

Updating Software

1 MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Software Update*** ⇨ ◉

2 ***Software Update*** ⇨ ◉

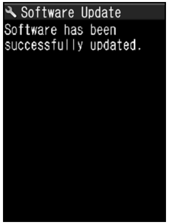


Software Update
We recommend that you stay in a place with a good reception while executing Software Update. Sending/receiving call/mail is not available during update. Continue?

3 **Follow onscreen instructions**

After Software is Updated

After update, handset restarts and update status appears.



Software Update
Software has been successfully updated.

Update Status

Note

- If handset does not restart after updating, remove and reinsert Battery, and turn handset on again. If handset still does not restart, call Softbank Mobile Customer Center (P. 15-53).

Software Update

Checking Update Results

1. MENU ⇨ ***Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Other Settings*** ⇨ ◉ ⇨ ***Software Update*** ⇨ ◉
2. ***Update Result*** ⇨ ◉

Using Regular Updates

A confirmation for software update appears at the scheduled time. Press ◉ or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-14
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-22
It takes a long time to turn on handset.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g., Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-14
	Is AC Charger plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-16
	Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	
Battery drains too fast.	Has the battery reached the end of its service life? The battery life may shorten depending on the usage environment.	P. 1-14
	The battery operation time fluctuates according to how you use handset.	
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 14-14

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is ***Dial/Sending Mail*** specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is ***Restrict Dialing*** set?	P. 2-23
A message is heard saying that the number you have reached is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Only a busy tone is heard after dialing a phone number.	Does ***Network is busy at this moment Please try again later*** appear in Display?	-
Cannot receive calls. The incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in ***Emission OFF Mode***?	P. 4-6
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-20
	Is ***Ring Volume*** set to ***Silent***?	P. 14-8
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is too loud during calls.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
Handset is slow to react when keys are pressed.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is ***Keypad Sound*** set to ***OFF***?	P. 14-10
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-20
Side Key is inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is ***Side Key Guard*** set to ***ON***?	P. 1-23
Nothing appears in Display.	Is Power Saver Mode activated?	P. 14-5
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35 °C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is ***Brightness*** under ***Backlight*** set to lower level?	P. 14-5
	Is ***ECO Mode*** activated?	P. 1-23
	Is ***Privacy Angle*** set to ***ON***?	P. 14-5

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Display backlight does not light.	Is ***Lighting*** under ***Backlight*** set to ***OFF***?	P. 14-5
Nothing appears in External Display.	Is ***Indicator Display*** set to ***OFF***?	P. 14-7
A message appears instead of an image, video or song.	The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. ***Not available, Expired file*** and ***No preview data***	-
☒ appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the ***Flicker*** setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 7-14
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with ***Flicker*** not set to ***Auto***? Set ***Flicker*** to ***Auto***.	P. 7-14
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are blurred.	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-6、 P. 7-8

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-3
Insert USIM appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-13
Insert microSD appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 12-12
Replace with a new one or check the disk appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 12-19
Network is busy at this moment Please try again later appears.	This may be due to errors or heavy traffic on the voice call lines or packet transmission network. Try again after a while. Emergency calls to 110, 119 and 118 are still possible.	-
Function cannot operate any more appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Other function active Cannot start appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
Other function active Cannot operate appears.		
Memory shortage appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-
Connection failed appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
SD (microSD card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted.	P. 12-19
Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used.	Was handset left uncharged for a long period after the battery ran out?	P. 1-22
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 11-4

Text Entry Key Assignments

In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ 1	. / @ - : ~[1] _1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ2	abcABC2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ3	defDEF3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ 4	ghiGHI4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ5	jklJKL5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ6	mnoMNO6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ7	pqrsPQRS7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ 8	tuvTUV8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ9	wxyzWXYZ9	9
0	わをんーゎ	ワヲンーヮ[2]0	0	0＋[3]
*	゛ ゜ [4] [5] [6]	゛ ゜ [4] [5] [6]	[4] [5]	*
#	、。？！・Space[7]	、。？！・Space[8]	, . ? ! ' - & ( ) ￥ Space	#

1 Appears as "～" during double-byte entry.

2 The lower case of "ワ" can be entered in double-byte mode.

3 Press and hold * to enter "+."

4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.

5 * to insert line feed "↲ ."

6 Before confirming characters, press ◎ to display "_," and press again in this state to enter "゛ " or "゜ ."

7 Cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary.

8 "、," "。," "？," "！ " and "・" cannot be entered when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

Text Entry Key Assignments

In 2-touch Mode

In Double-byte Mode

	Key	Press Next									
		１	２	３	４	５	６	７	８	９	０
Press First	１	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	Ａ ａ	Ｂ ｂ	Ｃ ｃ	Ｄ ｄ	Ｅ ｅ
	２	か ▨	き ▨	く ▨	け ▨	こ ▨	Ｆ ｆ	Ｇ ｇ	Ｈ ｈ	Ｉ ｉ	Ｊ ｊ
	３	さ ▨	し ▨	す ▨	せ ▨	そ ▨	Ｋ ｋ	Ｌ ｌ	Ｍ ｍ	Ｎ ｎ	Ｏ ｏ
	４	た ▨	ち ▨	つ っ	て ▨	と ▨	Ｐ ｐ	Ｑ ｑ	Ｒ ｒ	Ｓ ｓ	Ｔ ｔ
	５	な ▨	に ▨	ぬ ▨	ね ▨	の ▨	Ｕ ｕ	Ｖ ｖ	Ｗ ｗ	Ｘ ｘ	Ｙ ｙ
	６	は ▨	ひ ▨	ふ ▨	へ ▨	ほ ▨	Ｚ ｚ	？ ▨	！ ▨	― ▨	／ ▨
	７	ま ▨	み ▨	む ▨	め ▨	も ▨	￥ ▨	＆ ▨	▨	☎[1] ▨	▨
	８	や ゃ	（ ▨	ゆ ゅ	） ▨	よ ょ	＊ ▨	＃ ▨	▨	♥[1] ▨	[2]
	９	ら ▨	り ▨	る ▨	れ ▨	ろ ▨	１ ▨	２ ▨	３ ▨	４ ▨	５ ▨
	０	わ ゎ	を ▨	ん ▨	゛[3] 、	゜[3] 。	６ ▨	７ ▨	８ ▨	９ ▨	０ ▨

In Single-byte Mode

	Key	Press Next									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Press First	1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	ｶ ▨	ｷ ▨	ｸ ▨	ｹ ▨	ｺ ▨	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	ｻ ▨	ｼ ▨	ｽ ▨	ｾ ▨	ｿ ▨	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	ﾀ ▨	ﾁ ▨	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ ▨	ﾄ ▨	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ﾅ ▨	ﾆ ▨	ﾇ ▨	ﾈ ▨	ﾉ ▨	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ﾊ ▨	ﾋ ▨	ﾌ ▨	ﾍ ▨	ﾎ ▨	Z z	? ▨	! ▨	- ▨	/ ▨
	7	ﾏ ▨	ﾐ ▨	ﾑ ▨	ﾒ ▨	ﾓ ▨	\ ▨	& ▨	▨	☎[1] ▨	▨
	8	ﾔ ｬ	(▨	ﾕ ｭ	) ▨	ﾖ ｮ	* ▨	# ▨	▨	♥[1] ▨	[2]
	9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ -	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @softbank.ne.jp	5 ▨
	0	ﾜ ~	ｦ '	ﾝ ▨	ﾞ ,	ﾟ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

- Katakana are entered in double-byte mode when entering readings in Phone Book.
- Press * after entering a character to switch upper and lower case.

1 Can be entered when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.

2 Press 8 0 to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes.

3 After characters that cannot have “゛ “ or “゜ ,“ a separate “゛ “ or “゜ “ is entered. Before confirming characters, press ◎ to display “_,“ and press again in this state to enter “゛ “ or “゜ .“

▨:A space is entered for these key combinations.

Text Entry Key Assignments

In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
1	Rowあ, 1	Rowア, 1	. / @ ? ! ( ) , - _ : ’ ~[5] & ￥ 1 Single-byte space
2	Rowか, 2	Rowカ, 2	abcABC2
3	Rowさ, 3	Rowサ, 3	defDEF3
4	Rowた, 4	Rowタ, 4	ghiGHI4
5	Rowな, 5	Rowナ, 5	jklJKL5
6	Rowは, 6	Rowハ, 6	mnoMNO6
7	Rowま, 7	Rowマ, 7	pqrsPQRS7
8	Rowや, 8	Rowヤ, 8	tuvTUV8
9	Rowら, 9	Rowラ, 9	wxyzWXYZ9
0	わ を ん ゎ ー、0	ワ ヲ ン ヮ[4]ー、0	0
＊	[1] [2]	[1] [2]	[2] [6]
＃	[3]	[3]	

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in “In 5-touch Mode.”
- Numbers do not appear when entering readings in Own Dictionary.
- Press ＊ to toggle the case as follows: Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode
- Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.
  Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.
  Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.
- Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.

[1] When editing a reading, pressing ＊ adds/cancels “゛” or “゜.”

[2] ＊ to insert line feed “↲.”

[3] “、,” “。,” “？,” “！,” “・” and “(space)” appear right after a reading or character is determined.

[4] The lower case of “ワ” can only be entered in double-byte mode.

[5] “￣” is entered in double-byte mode.

[6] Pressing before confirming characters enters a space before confirming.

Kuten Code List

●Actual Display font may differ in appearance from the following.

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(スペース)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	‖	｜	…	‥	‘	’
014	“	”	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	￠	￡	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020		◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	¬	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029					◯					
031							０	１	２	３
032	４	５	６	７	８	９				
033				Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ	Ｆ	Ｇ
034	Ｈ	Ｉ	Ｊ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ	Ｐ	Ｑ
035	Ｒ	Ｓ	Ｔ	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ	Ｚ	
036						ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ	ｅ

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
037	ｆ	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ	ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ	ｏ
038	ｐ	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ	ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ	ｙ
039	ｚ									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	ϒ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ		㍉	㌔	㌢	㍍	㌘	㌧	㌃	㌶
134	㍑	㍗	㌍	㌦	㌣	㌫	㍊	㌻	㎜	㎝
135	㎞	㎎	㎏	㏄	㎡					
136				㍻	〝	〟	№	㏍	℡	㊤
137	㊥	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽	㍼
138	≒	≡	∫	∮	∑	√	⊥	∠	∟	⊿

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
139	∵	∩	∪							
	あ									
160		亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏								
	い									
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170		院	陰	隠	韻	吋				
	う									
170							右	宇	烏	羽
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲							
	え									
173				荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩			

Kuten Code List

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	お									
178								於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音		
	か									
182									下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200		粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					
	き									
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	
	く									
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					
230		掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									
	け									
232		卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					
240		検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					
	こ									
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250		后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工
251	巧	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
252	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
253	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
254	紅	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
255	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
256	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	
	さ									
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			
	し									
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310		拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食
311	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審
312	心	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		
	す									
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320		澄	摺	寸						
	せ									
320					世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製

Kuten Code List

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330		繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					
	そ									
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
	た									
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					
	ち									
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵					
360		帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫	徴	懲	挑
361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶
362	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗
363	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳			
	つ									
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				
	て									
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		
	と									
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						
	な									
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							
	に									
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390		如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認		
	ぬ～の									
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					
	は									
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
	ひ									
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								
	ふ									
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				
	へ									
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									
	ほ									
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						
	ま									
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	末	沫	迄	侭
439	繭	麿	万	慢	満					
440		漫	蔓							
	み									
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
	む									
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
	め									
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
	も									
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
	や									
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥

Kuten Code List

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									
	ゆ									
449		愉	愈	油	癒					
450		諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
	よ									
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
	ら									
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
	り									
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
	る～れ									
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470		蓮	連	錬						
	ろ									
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
	わ									
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
476										
477										
478										
479										
480		弌	丐	丕	个	丱	丶	丼	丿	乂
481	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	于	亞
482	亟	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄	仆
483	仂	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估	佛
484	佝	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩	佰
485	侑	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘	俛
486	俑	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪	倥
487	倅	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們	倆
488	偃	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬	偸
489	傀	傚	傅	傴	傲					
490		僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僣
491	僮	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚
492	儡	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔
493	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉
494	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪
495	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛
496	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔
497	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋	剌
498	剞	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍	劔
499	劒	剱	劈	劑	辨					
500		辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁	勍	勗	勞
501	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸	勹	匆	匈
502	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣	匯	匱	匳
503	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍	凖	卞	卩
504	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠	厦	厥	厮
505	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼	燮	叮	叨
506	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭	吼	吮	吶
507	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟	呱	呷	呰
508	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐	咆	哇	咢	咸
509	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨					
510		咫	哂	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏
511	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌
512	售	啜	啅	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀
513	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃
514	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔
515	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營
516	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
517	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂
518	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮
519	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉					
520		圈	國	圍	圓	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦
521	圷	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡
522	坿	垉	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆
523	埔	埒	埓	堊	埖	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲
524	堡	塢	塋	塰	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹
525	墟	墫	墺	壞	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑
526	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹
527	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬
528	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘
529	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩					
530		奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨
531	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚
532	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媾
533	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻
534	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃	孅
535	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳	孵
536	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇	寉
537	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰	寶
538	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨	尸
539	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓					
540		屐	屏	孱	屬	屮	乢	屶	屹	岌
541	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼	岷	峅	岾
542	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌	峪	崋	崕
543	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢	崚	崙	崘
544	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂
545	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷	嶼	巉	巍
546	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已	巵	帋	帚	帙
547	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃	幀	幎	幗	幔
548	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并	幺	麼	广	庠
549	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏					
550		廖	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢	廡	廨	廩
551	廬	廱	廳	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝
552	彜	弋	弑	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌
553	彎	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷
554	徃	徂	彿	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘
555	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝
556	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛
557	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷	恟

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
558	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙
559	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚					
560		悄	悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸
561	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕
562	愆	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惻	惱
563	愍	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿	愼	愬
564	愴	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慙	慚	慫
565	慴	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖
566	憇	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮	懌	懊
567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦
568	懣	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懾	戀	戈
569	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛					
570		戞	戡	截	戮	戰	戲	戳	扁	扎
571	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼	抂	抉	找	抒
572	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗	拑	抻	拏	拿
573	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拂	拇	抛	拉
574	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯	拵	捐	挾
575	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	掫	捶	掣	掏
576	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩	揀	揆	揣
577	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦	搶
578	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕
579	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼					
580		據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂	擱	擧
581	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴	擲
582	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攅	攤	攣	攫	攴
583	攵	攷	收	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘
584	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫
585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旙	无
586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴
587	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝
589	曁	暹	曉	暾	暼					
590		曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	昿	曦	曩	曰
591	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦	朧	霸	朮	朿
592	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣	杤
593	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡	枅
594	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞	柝
595	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框	栩
596	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷	桿
597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴
598	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘

Kuten Code List

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍					
600		棔	棧	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣	椥
601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椡	棆	楹
602	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
610		檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞
611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒
612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿
614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
620		沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
621	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤
622	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
623	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
624	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
625	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
626	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
627	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
628	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
629	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
630		漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯
631	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦
632	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬
633	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁
634	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾
635	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳
636	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥
637	煕	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	熕	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾
642	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犹	犲	狃
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畚
653	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴
654	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙
656	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳
657	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴
658	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨
659	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰					
660		癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	穡
675	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕	窘
676	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笶	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	絛	綏	絽	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵
693	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊	縣
695	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻
696	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖	繞
697	繙	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽
698	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖
699	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺					
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膸	膽	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臈	臚	臟
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀	艙	艘
716	艝	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮	艱
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720		茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
722	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730		蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊
731	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
732	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740		蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻
742	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻
744	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞
745	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙	袢
746	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙
747	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊
748	褓	襃	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
754	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄
755	誨	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂
756	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷
757	諞	諛	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫					
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋
772	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰	軆
773	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈬
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔
793	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁
794	鑒	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵
795	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊
796	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻
797	閹	閾	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖
798	關	闡	闥	闢	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陷	陜	陞					
800		陝	陟	陦	陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱	靹	鞅	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頽	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餒	餔	餘	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒
829	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鷁	鶻
832	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鷓	鷸	鷦	鷭
833	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈
834	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼
837	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷
839	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠					
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙			

Weather Indicators

Normally Displayed	
☀	Clear (Day)
☾	Clear (Night)
☁	Cloudy
☂	Rain
☃	Snow
⚡	Thunder and Lighting
0%	0% Chance of Rain
10%	10% Chance of Rain
20%	20% Chance of Rain
30%	30% Chance of Rain
40%	40% Chance of Rain
50%	50% Chance of Rain
60%	60% Chance of Rain
70%	70% Chance of Rain
80%	80% Chance of Rain
90%	90% Chance of Rain
100%	100% Chance of Rain
▷	Later
／	Partial

Pollen	
🌲	Low
🌲	Somewhat High
🌲	High
🌲	Extremely High

Sakura Blossoms	
🌸	Budding
🌸	Near Full Blossom
🌸	Full Blossom
🌸	Falling

Autumn Leaves	
🍁	Unchanged
🍁	Changing
🍁	Perfect for Viewing
🍁	Falling

UV Rays	
☀	Weak
☀	Somewhat Strong
☀	Strong
☀	Extremely Strong

Typhoon	
🌀	Forming
🌀	Approaching
🌀	Emergency Status

Disaster	
⚠	Heavy Rain
💨	Strong Winds

Topic	
📢	Notification

Menu List

- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to ***Basic***.
- See "Check Default Style Mode Settings" (P. 14-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	–	–	–	P. 5-6
Outbox	–	–	–	P. 5-9
Draft	–	–	–	P. 5-21
Tomomato-Mail BOX	–	–	–	P. 5-11
Compose Message	–	–	–	P. 5-3
Compose SMS	–	–	–	P. 5-5
Server Mail	Mail List	–	–	P. 5-7, P. 5-18
	Server Mail Memory	–	–	P. 5-18
Retrieve New	–	–	–	P. 5-18
Templates	–	–	–	P. 5-17
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	–	–	P. 14-16
	Scroll	–	1 Line	P. 14-17
	Font Size	–	Standard	
	Mail List Disp.	–	1 Line+Body	
	Start Attachment (auto)	–	OFF	
	Header/Signature	–	Edit Header, Edit Signature: Not Stored, Edit Quotation Marks:---------------, Insert Setting: Selected	P. 14-16, P. 14-17
	Mail Box Lock	–	Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Server Mail: Unlocked	P. 5-12
	Receiving Setting	–	Operation Preferred	P. 14-17
	Read Out Setting	–	Select Voice: Female 1, Read Out Received Mail: ON	

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	Emotion/Keyword	—	Disp. Emotion: ON, Disp. Keyword: OFF	P. 14-16
	S! Mail Settings	—	Message Download: Auto(All), Delivery Report: OFF	
	SMS Settings	—	SMS Report Request: OFF, SMS Validity Period: 3 Days, SMS Input Character: Japanese(70char.)	
	Check Settings	—	—	P. 14-17
	Reset	—	—	

Yahoo! Keitai

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
Saved Pages	—	—	—	
History	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Enter URL	—	—	—	
PC Site Browser	—	—	See “PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai“ (P. 15-31).	P. 6-5
Browser Settings	Font Size	—	Standard	P. 14-19
	Scroll	—	Single Line	
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	
	Flash Sound Effect	—	ON	
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	
	Check Settings	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
	Reset	—	—	

S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	–	–	–	P. 9-8
Settings	Sound/Vib Settings	–	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 14-24
	Backlight Settings	–	Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON	
	Reset	–	–	
Information	–	–	–	P. 9-8

TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	–	–	–	P. 8-6
Program Guide	–	–	–	P. 8-8
Booking Program List	–	–	–	P. 8-11
Timer Recording List	–	–	–	
Result Timer Rec	–	–	–	P. 8-16
TV Link	–	–	–	P. 8-14
Channel List	–	–	–	P. 8-13
Channel Settings	–	–	–	P. 8-3
User Settings	Subtitles	–	ON (Wide:Bottom)	P. 14-21
	Rec. While Low Battery	–	ON	P. 14-22
	TV Effect	–	Sound Effect: Auto, Visual Image Effect: Dynamic	P. 14-21
	TV Sound While Closed	–	ON	
	TV Power Saving	–	OFF (not set)	
	Display Light	–	Constant Light	
	Data BC Settings	–	Set Image Disp.: ON, Sound Effect: ON	P. 14-22

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
User Settings	Icon Always Show	–	ON	P. 14-21
	Time Shift Setup	–	Auto ON	P. 14-22
	Check TV Settings	–	–	
	Reset Channel Setting	–	–	
	Reset Storage Area	–	–	
	Reset TV Settings	–	–	

Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Photo Mode	–	–	–	P. 7-6
Movie Mode	–	–	–	P. 7-8
Voice Mode	–	–	–	P. 7-12
Quick Album	–	–	–	P. 12-5
Videos	–	–	–	P. 7-8

Entertainment

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mobile Widget	Widget Contents	–	–	P. 10-2
	Settings	–	See "Settings for Mobile Widget under Entertainment" (P. 15-32)	–
	Information	–	–	P. 10-2
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	–	–	P. 10-4
	Settings	–	See "Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment" (P. 15-32)	–
S! Info Ch./Weather	What's New	–	–	P. 10-5
	History	–	–	

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Info Ch./Weather	Register/Cancel	—	—	P. 10-5
	Get Latest Contents	—	—	P. 10-8
	Settings	—	S! Information Notif.: ON, Font Size: Standard	P. 14-26
	Weather Indicator	—	See “Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment“ (P. 15-32)	—
BookSurfing	—	—	—	P. 10-7

Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Alarm	—	44	—	P. 11-17
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 11-9
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 11-16
Dictionary	Enter Word	—	—	P. 2-28
	Text Reader	—	—	—
	Reference History	—	—	P. 2-28
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 11-14
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 11-12
Pedometer	—	—	—	P. 11-19
Life History Viewer	—	—	—	P. 11-7
S! GPS Navi	Navi Appli	—	—	P. 11-5
	Current Location	—	—	
	Position Location	—	—	
	Location Logs	—	—	P. 11-26
	NAVI Settings	—	See “NAVI Settings for S! GPS Navi under Tools“ (P. 15-33)	—

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Osaifu-Keitai	Lifestyle-Appli	–	–	P. 11-2
	IC Card Lock Set.	–	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock(Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-3
	Call Remote Lock	–	OFF	P. 11-4
	IC Card Illumination	–	ON	P. 14-28
	Interface Settings	–	Browser: ON	P. 14-29
S! Addressbook Back-up	Start Sync	–	–	P. 2-25
	Auto Sync Settings	–	ON/OFF: OFF	P. 14-12
	Sync Log	–	–	P. 2-26
Account Details	–	0	–	P. 1-22
Bar Code Reader	–	–	–	P. 11-21
Text Reader	–	–	–	P. 11-23
Receive Ir Data	–	79	–	P. 13-3
Bluetooth	Device List	–	–	P. 13-6
	Register New Devices	–	–	
	Bluetooth ON/Bluetooth OFF	–	Bluetooth OFF	P. 13-8
	Accept Registered	–	–	
	Bluetooth Settings	–	Time-out to Search: 05 Seconds, Forward Ring Tone: ON, Dial From Other Device: Valid	P. 14-29
Play/Erase Msg.	–	–	–	P. 3-5, P. 3-18
Play/Erase VC Msg.	–	–	–	P. 3-5
Voice Memo	–	43	–	P. 11-15
Voice Announce	–	91	–	P. 14-10
Forwarding Image	–	–	ON	P. 14-12
microSD Manager	–	–	–	P. 12-13

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
USIM Operation	–	–	–	P. 2-24, P. 5-20

Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	–	46	–	P. 12-2
Melody	–	16	–	
S! Appli	–	–	–	
Widget	–	–	–	
Ring Songs·Music	–	–	–	
Videos	–	–	–	
Books	–	–	–	
Key Illumination	–	–	–	
TV	–	–	–	
PDF	–	–	–	
Other Documents	–	–	–	

Music

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
–	–	–	–	P. 9-5

Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	–	24	–	P. 3-10

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Dialed Calls	–	–	–	P. 3-10
Blog/Mail Member	–	97	–	P. 5-4
Tomo-Den	–	–	–	P. 3-12
Common Phrases	–	38	–	P. 2-15
Own Dictionary	–	82	–	
DL Dictionary	–	–	–	

Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
–	–	–	–	P. 2-19

Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Style Mode Setting	–	–	–	P. 14-3
Incoming Call	Ring Volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 14-8
	Select Ring Tone	13	Phone (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Video Call (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Mail (Select Ring Tone: You've got mail 1, Select Receiving Disp.: Flying Type)	
	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	
	Illumination	89	Set Color: Differs according to the model color., Set Pattern: Pattern 1, Missed Info: ON	
	Manner Mode Setting	20	Manner Mode Set: Manner Mode, Manner Start Time: OFF	P. 14-9
	Disp. Phone Book Image	–	ON	
	Answer Setting	58	Any Key Answer	

Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Incoming Call	Mail Ring Time	68	Mail: ON (Ring Time: 05 Seconds)	P. 14-8
	Ring Time(sec.)	90	Set Mute Seconds: OFF, Missed Calls Display: Display	P. 4-6
	Info Notice Setting	65	ON	P. 14-10
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
	Disp. Call/Receive No.	–	Differs according to the model color.	P. 14-10
Talk	Hyper Clear Voice	–	Low	P. 14-13
	Auto Voice Memo	–	OFF	
	Noise Reduction	76	ON	
	Quality Alarm	75	No Tone	
	Reconnect Signal	77	No Tone	
	Illumination in talk	–	OFF	
	Set Hold Tone	–	On Hold Tone: Tone 1	
	Setting when folded	18	End the Call	
Dialing	Pause Dial	84	–	P. 14-12
	Sub-address Setting	–	OFF	
	Prefix Setting	–	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010), 184(Prefix: 184), 186(Prefix: 186)	
	Headset SW to Dial	–	OFF	P. 14-11
	Int'l Dial Assistance	–	Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON, Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix Setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 14-13
Video Call	Visual Preference	–	Normal	P. 3-17
	Select Image	–	On Hold, Holding, Substitute Image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice Memo: Pre-installed	P. 14-14
	Auto Redial as Voice	–	OFF	
	Display Setting	–	Main Display: Other Side, Front Camera Reverse: ON	
	Hands-free Switch	–	ON	

Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Display	Display Setting	56	Differs according to the model color.	P. 14-3
	Backlight	70	Lighting: 15Sec.+Saver (Light Time: 01 Minutes), Charging: Standard, Brightness: ON+Level 4	P. 14-5
	Display Design	86	Differs according to the model color.	P. 14-4
	Indicator Display	93	ON (See “Indicator Display for Display under Settings” (P. 15-33))	–
	Font	66	Font Type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character Size: Standard	P. 14-4
	Desktop Icon	63	Theme 1 (S-1バトル, コンテンツ得パック, 選べるかんたん動画, S! Quick News List, TV, Photo Mode, Quick Search)	P. 14-6
	3D Display Setting	–	ON	
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 14-5
	Original Menu	52	Account Details, Receive Ir Data, Bluetooth, Calculator, Alarm, Bar Code Reader, Dictionary, My Picture, Books	P. 14-7
	Menu Display Set	57	Menu Display: List, Theme: Differs according to the model color, Memory Focus: OFF	P. 14-6
	Viewer Settings	–	Picture	P. 14-5
	Auto-change Screen	–	ON	P. 1-9, P. 14-5
	Icons	36	–	P. 1-7
	Icons Setting	–	ON	P. 14-7
	Privacy Angle	–	OFF	P. 14-5
	Image Display Mode	–	Vivid	
	Quick Info Setting	–	Display Sender	
	Screen Effect	–	Turn	
Call Time/Charge	Call Data	61	–	P. 3-11
	Set Max Cost Limit	–	Notify Setting: OFF	P. 14-14
	Reset Total	60	–	P. 3-18

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Call Time/Charge	Auto Reset Total Cost	–	OFF	P. 14-14
Clock	Set Main Time	31	Auto Time Adjust: Auto, Summer Time: OFF	P. 14-2
	Set Sub Clock	–	Display Method: OFF, Summer Time: OFF, Area Name: Display	
	Clock Display	39	Display: ON, Size: Small, Color: Differ according to the model color.	
	Alarm Setting	–	Alarm Preferred	
	Reading Out in Alarm	–	This Function cannot operate in English-Mode.	–
	Clock Alarm Tone Set	–	Alarm Tone	P. 14-2
	Auto Power ON	–	OFF	P. 14-3
	Auto Power OFF	–	OFF	
Security	Lock	–	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	–	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-3
	Call Remote Lock	–	OFF	P. 11-4
	Keypad Lock	–	After Closed: OFF, Timer: OFF	P. 4-4
	Emission OFF Mode	–	NO (not set)	P. 4-6
	Secret Mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-7
	Secret Data Only Mode	41	OFF (not set)	
	Reject Unknown	–	Accept	P. 4-6
	Call Setting W/O ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select Ring Tone: Same as Ring Tone, Select Calling Disp.: Same as Display)	
	Change Security Code	29	9999	P. 1-21
	IC Card Authentic.	–	OFF	P. 4-5
	PIN Setting	–	PIN1 Code Entry Set: OFF	P. 4-2
Illumination	Closed Illum.	–	ON (Set Color: Differ according to the model color., Set Pattern: Pattern 2)	P. 14-27
	Key Illumination	–	ON (See “Key Illumination for Illumination under Settings“ (P. 15-34))	–
	Key Backlight	–	Differ according to the model color.	P. 14-28

Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
External Connection	USB Mode Setting	–	Communication Mode	P. 13-9
	Headset Usage Setting	51	Headset+speaker	P. 14-10
	Headset Mic. Setting	–	Headset Microphone	P. 14-11
	Auto Answer Setting	94	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Connection Settings	SMS Center Selection	–	819066519300	P. 14-18
	Certificate	–	All Certificates: Valid	P. 6-13
	Retrieve NW Info	–	–	P. 1-18
Int'l Roaming Set	NW Search Mode	–	Auto	P. 14-15
	PLMN Setting	–	–	
	Select Network	–	AUTO	
	Display Operator Name	–	Display OFF	
Optional Services	Caller ID Notification	17	Activate/Deactivate: ON	P. 3-20
	Voice Mail/Divert	–	–	P. 3-14, P. 3-19
	Call Waiting	–	–	P. 3-19
	Call Barring	–	–	P. 3-20
Other Settings	Keypad Sound	30	OFF	P. 14-10
	Charge Sound	–	ON	
	Open-close Sound	–	Open Sound: Open-1 (Ring Time: 2.0 Seconds), Close Sound: Close-1 (Ring Time: 2.0 Seconds)	
	Battery Level	71	–	P. 1-22
	Network Status	–	–	
	Side Key Guard	–	OFF	P. 1-23
	Character Input Set	35	Input Mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 Change Mode: T9 Kanji Change Mode, CHG Input Size: Standard, Auto Cursor: Normal	P. 14-27
	Shortcut-key Setting	–	Camera	

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Other Settings	Reset Settings	23	–	P. 14-30
	Initialize	–	–	
	Software Update	–	–	P. 15-4

PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	–	–	–	P. 6-5
Bookmark	–	–	–	P. 6-10
History	–	–	–	P. 6-6
Enter URL	–	–	–	
Yahoo! Keitai	–	–	–	P. 6-3
PC Site Brw. Settings	Warning Messages	–	ON	P. 14-20
	Scroll	–	Single Line	P. 14-19
	Display Mode Settings	–	PC Screen: 100%, Small Screen: Standard	P. 14-20
	Downloads	–	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 14-19
	Memory Manager	–	–	
	Security	–	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check PC Site Brw. Set.	–	–	
	Initialized Browser	–	–	
	Reset PC Site Brw. Set.	–	–	

Settings for Mobile Widget under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	–	–	ON	P. 14-25
Auto Roaming	–	–	OFF	
Delete Content	–	–	–	
Cookies	–	–	ON	
Delete Cookies	–	–	–	
Standby Disp. Set.	–	–	ON	

Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	–	OFF	P. 14-25
	General	–	OFF	
	Special	–	OFF	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	–	ON	
	Speed Settings	–	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	–	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	–	–	ON	
Del. Quick News	–	–	–	

Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Weather	–	–	–	P. 10-5
Manual Update	–	–	–	P. 10-9
Settings	Weather Update	–	ON	P. 14-26

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Settings	Standby Setting	–	ON	P. 14-26
	Weather Notif.	–	ON	

NAVI Settings for S! GPS Navi under Tools

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Map Setting	Select Navi Appli	–	NAVITIME	P. 14-29
	Map Activate Setting	–	After positioning	
Map URL Settings	–	–	1: http://map.navitime.jp, 2, 3, 4, 5: Not Recorded	
Send Location Info	–	–	Confirm	

Indicator Display for Display under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Disp. Clock Only	–	–	OFF	P. 14-7
Clock Type	–	–	Digital 1	
Called	–	–	ON	P. 14-8
Mail	–	–	ON	
Connection	–	–	ON	
Time Signal	Set Time	–	60 Minutes	
	Set Color	–	Color 7	
	Set Pattern	–	Pattern 6	
Display Time	–	–	15 Seconds	

Key Illumination for Illumination under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Power ON	–	–	ON	P. 14-28
Power OFF	–	–	ON	
Incoming Call	–	–	Antique Gold	
Dialing	–	–	Rainbow	
Talking Start	–	–	Fun Time	
Mail Receiving	–	–	Antique Gold	
Mail Sending	–	–	Rainbow	
Emotion	–	–	Always	
Alarm	–	–	Wavy Aqua	
Snooze	–	–	ON	
Ir/IC Exchanging	–	–	ON	
Missed Call	–	–	Cosmetic Red	
Open	–	–	Differs with handset color.	
Event	–	–	ON	

Main Specifications

Model		930N
Dimensions (H x W x D) (When Closed)		109 x 50 x 13.9 mm (thickest Part: 16.4 mm)
Weight		Approx. 111 g
Continuous Standby Time		[3G] Approx. 580 hrs [GSM] Approx. 280 hrs
Continuous Talk Time		[3G] Voice Call: Approx. 220 min. Video Call: Approx. 100 min. [GSM] Voice Call: Approx. 190 min.
Charging Time		Max. 120 min.
Display/ Indicator Display	Type	Display: LTPS_TFT 262,144 colors Indicator Display: Organic EL one color
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.2 inches Indicator Display: Approx. 0.77 inches
	Pixels	Display: 409,920 pixels (480 x 854 dots) Indicator Display: 3,744 pixels (96 x 39 dots)

Camera	Imaging device	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: CMOS
	Lens size	Front Camera: 1/10.0 inch Rear Camera: 1/3.2 inch
	Effective pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 810 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 800 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Front Camera: Up to approx. 1.9 x Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9.0 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files[1]
	Still images for continuous shooting	5 to 20 files[2]
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 218 sec.[3] Memory card: Up to approx. 120 min.[3]
	Video file format	MP4

TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 180 min.
	Maximum recording time	Approx. 600 min.[4]
Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®	Storage Capacity	Approx. 195 MB[5]

1 In case the image size is QCIF (176 x 144) and the image quality is set to ***Normal*** (the file size is 10 KB).

2 Varies depending on the image size.

3 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	Memory card
Image size	QCIF (176 x 144)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	2MB	Long Time
Recording type	Normal	

4 Approximate time when recorded on a 2 GB memory card.

5 Shared with images, videos, saved pages, books, images (captured with TV), PDF files and graphic mail templates.

Handset Materials

Where Used		Material/Finish
Multi Selector center key		PC resin, aluminum vapor deposition + UV coating
Rear Camera		ABS resin, tin vapor deposition + UV coating
Battery compartment	Screws	Iron, zinc plating (chromate)
	USIM Card cover	Stainless alloy
	Terminals	Copper alloy, gold plating
Charger terminals		Copper alloy, gold plating
Battery (terminals)		Epoxy resin (glass epoxy), gold plating

Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000[1]	–
Schedule	Events	2,500	–
To Do List	Tasks	100	–
Mail	Received messages	1,000[2,3,4]	1,000[2]
	Sent messages	400[2,3,4]	200[2]
	Draft messages	20[2]	–
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100[5,6]	–
	PC Site Browser	100[5]	–
Saved Pages		100[2]	50[2]
S! Appli		99[2,6]	–
Still images		1,000[2,4]	–
Videos		100[2,5]	–
Still images captured with TV		100[2]	–
Widgets		100[2,6]	–
Melodies		400[2]	–
Songs		100[2]	–
books		400[2]	–
Key Illumination		50	–
PDF files		400[2]	–
Template (Graphic Mail)		1,000[6]	–
Answering Machine		Voice calls: 5 (20 sec. each) Video calls: 2 (20 sec. each)	–
Voice Memo		1 (20 sec.)	–
Dialed Calls		30	–
Received Calls		30	–
Speed Dial		10 (Entry Number 000-009)	–

[1] Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.

[2] The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.

[3] An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.

[4] Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.

[5] Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.

[6] Includes data stored by default.

Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder				File
DCIM	XXXNECDT[1]			Still images captured with Camera and JPEG images copied or moved from handset
MISC				Settings file for DPOF printing
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Inbox	Backup data of Inbox
			Sent Messages	Backup data of Outbox
			Drafts	Backup data of Draft
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Book	Book files
			Widget	Widget files
			Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash® files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Other Documents	PDF files or Other document files
			Pictograms	My Pictograms
			Pictures	Still images

Folder				File
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	My Items	Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies
			Videos	Videos
		NE_Folder		Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO			TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX[2]			TV Program recording files

[1] XXX: Three single-byte numbers from 100 to 999

[2] XXX: Three single-byte alphanumeric characters (hexadecimal) from 001 to FFF

Index

Number

- 2-touch Mode ... 2-16
- 3D Display Setting ... 14-6
- 5-touch Mode ... 2-12

A

- Access Files ... 12-3
  - Composite Image ... 12-17
  - List Setting ... 12-17
  - Location Information ... 12-16
  - Set Image Disp. ... 12-17
- Access Handset Functions ... 2-2
- Access History ... 6-3, 6-6
  - Delete ... 6-12
- Access the Internet
  - From Bookmarks ... 6-10
  - From Data Broadcasts ... 8-7
  - From Entered URL Record ... 6-12
  - From Scanned Data ... 11-30
  - From TV Links ... 8-14
  - From URL in Text ... 5-21
  - From Web Page ... 6-13
  - Multi Window ... 6-7
  - PC Site Browser ... 6-5
  - Use Access History ... 6-3, 6-6
  - Yahoo! Keitai ... 6-3
- Account Details ... 1-22
- Add Folder
  - Bookmark ... 6-15
  - Data Folder ... 12-11
  - Messages ... 5-20
- Adjust Earpiece Volume ... 3-3, 3-8
- After Sales Service ... 15-52
- Alarm ... 11-17
  - Cancel ... 11-18
  - Edit ... 11-29
  - Release All ... 11-29
  - Set ... 11-17
- Alarm Activation Operations ... 11-17
- Alarm Notification Operations
  - Schedule ... 11-10
  - To Do List ... 11-12
- Alarm Setting ... 14-2
- Answer Calls
  - Bluetooth® ... 13-7
  - Video Calls ... 3-8
  - Voice Calls ... 3-4
- Answer Setting ... 14-9
- Answering Machine ... 3-4
  - Activate When Call Arrives ... 3-4
  - Delete Messages ... 3-18
  - Play Messages ... 3-5
  - Settings ... 3-4
- Any Key Answer ... 14-9
- Attach to Mail
  - Bookmark ... 6-15
  - Delete Attached Files ... 5-16
  - Files ... 5-3
  - Shot Still Image/Video ... 5-16
- Authentication Password ... 13-3
- Auto Answer Setting ... 14-11
- Auto Cursor ... 14-27
- Auto Power On/Off ... 14-3
- Auto Redial as Voice ... 14-14
- Auto Refresh (Mobile Widget) ... 14-25
- Auto Refresh (S! Quick News) ... 14-25
- Auto Reset Total Cost ... 14-14
- Auto Roaming ... 14-25
- Auto Save Set ... 7-4
- Auto Timer ... 7-11
- Auto Voice Memo ... 14-13
- Auto-change Screen ... 1-9, 14-5
- Auto-sort ... 5-11

B

- Backlight ... 14-5
- Backlight Settings (S! Appli) ... 14-24
- Bar Code Reader ... 11-21
  - Check Scanned Data ... 11-21
  - Delete Scanned Data ... 11-30
  - Scan ... 11-21
- Basic Key Operations ... 1-3
- Battery ... 1-14
  - Installation ... 1-14
- Blog/Mail Member ... 5-4
  - Add Addresses ... 5-4
  - Blog Upload Destination ... 5-4
  - Delete Addresses ... 5-16

- Edit Address 5-16
- Specify Recipients 5-15

Bluetooth® **13-5**
- Add New Device 13-6
- Connecting 13-6
- Delete Added Device 13-11
- Device List 13-7
- Discontinue 13-8
- Playing Music 13-7
- Search 13-6
- Settings 14-29
- Talk 13-7

Bluetooth Info **14-30**

Bookmarks **6-10**
- Access Page 6-10
- Add Folder 6-15
- Delete 6-16
- Delete Folder 6-15
- Edit URL 6-15
- Move 6-15
- Number of Bookmarks 6-15
- Save 6-10
- Save Scanned URL 11-30
- Send by Mail 6-15
- Sort Folder 6-15

Books **10-7**

BookSurfing® **10-7**

C

Calculator **11-16**

Call Barring **3-20**

Call Forward **3-14**

Call Rejection **3-16**

Call Time/Charge **3-11**

Call Waiting **3-19**

Call While Abroad **3-13**

Caller ID **3-20**

Camera **7-2**
- Attach Location 7-14, 7-15
- Auto Save Set 7-4
- Blog Upload 7-14
- Capture Still Images 7-6
- Effect 7-14
- Flicker 7-14
- Memory Info 7-14
- Movie Type Set 7-14
- Quality Setting 7-14
- Quick Album 12-5
- Record Videos 7-8
- Settings 14-23
- Shake Correction 7-4, 7-14
- Switch Cameras 7-5
- Viewfinders 7-3

Capture Still Images **7-6**
- Auto Timer 7-11
- Continuous Shooting 7-10
- Frame 7-11
- Panoramic Shooting 7-11
- Smile Mode 7-10

Center Access Code **1-21**

Certificate **6-13**

Chance Capture **7-12**

Change
- Entry Number 2-30
- Font Size (Message Text) 5-22
- Graphic Mail Effects 5-17
- Icon Image 2-27
- Network Password 3-20
- PIN1/PIN2 4-2
- Security Code 1-21
- Set To, Cc or Bcc 5-15

Change Skin **14-24**

Channel List **14-21**
- Delete a Channel 14-21
- Remote Control Numbers 14-21
- Save Stations of a Different Area 8-13
- Switch 8-13

Channel Settings **8-3**
- Automatic 8-13

Character Stamp **12-9**

Charge Battery **1-14**
- AC Charger 1-16
- Desktop Holder 1-17

Charge Sound **14-10**

Check Battery Level **1-22**

Check PC Site Brw. Set **14-19**

Check Settings (Mail) **14-17**

Check settings (Yahoo! Keitai) **14-19**

Check TV Settings **14-22**

CHG Input Method **2-12**

CHG Input Size 14-27
Clear Learned (Text Entry) 14-27
Clock 14-2
Clock Alarm Tone Set 14-2
Clock Display 14-2
Closed Illumination 14-27
Codes 1-21
  Center Access Code 1-21
  Network Password 1-21
  PIN1/PIN2 1-12
  Security Code 1-21
Compose & Send Messages
  Attach Files 5-3
  Compose S! Mail 5-3
  Compose SMS 5-5
  Delete Receiver 5-15
  Edit 5-21
  From Phone Book 2-30
  From Scanned Data 11-30
  From Tomo-Den 3-12
  From Web Page 6-13
  Graphic Mail 5-4
  Insert Header/Signature 5-15
  Paste Location 5-15
  Save 5-16
  Specify Blog/Mail Member List Recipients 5-15
  To, Cc or Bcc 5-15
Compose Messages 5-3, 5-5
Continuous Shooting 7-10
Cookie Settings (Internet) 14-19
Cookie Settings (Mobile Widget) 14-25
Copy
  Between Handset & Memory Card 12-14
  Event 11-27
  Phone Book Entries 2-24, 2-31
  SMS Messages 5-20
  Text 2-14
Customer Service 15-53
Customize Mail Address 14-16

D

Data BC Settings 14-22
Data Broadcasts 8-7
Data Folder 12-2
  Add Folder 12-11
  Change Order of Files 12-16
  Check File Information 12-16
  Delete Files 12-19
  Delete Folder 12-18
  Edit File Name 12-18
  Edit Folder Name 12-18
  Edit Still Images 12-9
  Edit Videos 12-10
  Memory Info 12-18
  Move Files 12-11
  Open Files 12-3
  Original Animation 12-6
  Playlist (Melody) 12-7
  Playlist (Video) 12-7
  Quick Album 12-5
  Ringtone 12-16
  Secret Folders 4-7
  Stand-by Display 12-16
Delete All LifeApp 14-29
Delete All S! App 14-24
Delete Cache 14-19
Delete Content (Mobile Widget) 14-25
Delete Cookies 14-19
Delete Quick News 14-25
Delivery Report (S! Mail) 14-16
Desktop Icon Settings 14-6
Desktop Icons 2-3
  Add Icons 2-6
  CHG Icon Image 2-27
  Delete Desktop Icons 2-27
  Reset 2-27
  Show/Hide 2-27
  Sort 2-27
Desktop Info 2-6
Dial
  Bluetooth 13-7
  From Dialed Calls 3-10
  From Phone Book 2-21
  From Received Calls 3-10
  From Redial 3-10
  From Scanned Data 11-30
  From Tomo-Den 3-12

- From Web Page 6-13
- Global Roaming 3-13
- International Calls 3-3
- Phone Number in Message Text 5-21
- Video Calls 3-7
- Voice Calls 3-3

Dial From Other Device 14-30
Dial Lock 4-3
Dialed Calls 3-10
Dictionaries 2-15
Disp. Call/Receive No. 14-10
Disp. Phone Book Image 14-9
Display Design 14-4
Display Indicators 1-6
Display Light (TV) 14-21
Display Mode Settings 14-20
Display Operator Name 14-15
Display Setting 14-3
Display Setting (Video Call) 14-14
DL Dictionary 2-16
- Delete 2-30

Download
- Books 10-7
- Music 9-4
- S! Appli 9-8
- Templates (Graphic Mail) 5-17
- Widgets 10-2

Downloads 14-19
DPOF setting 12-15
- Cancel 12-19

E

ECO Mode 1-23
Edit
- Address (Blog/Mail Member) 5-16
- Alarm Settings 11-29
- Blog/Mail Member List Name 5-16
- Event 11-27
- File Name (Data Folder) 12-18
- Folder Name (Bookmark) 6-15
- Folder Name (Data Folder) 12-18
- Folder Name (Messages) 5-20
- Folder Name (Templates) 2-29
- Own Dictionary 2-29
- Phone Book Entry 2-31
- Record Timer Settings 8-15
- Re-entering in T9 Input Mode 2-17
- Still Images 12-9
- Template (Graphic Mail) 5-17
- Templates (Common Phrases) 2-15, 2-29
- Text 2-14
- URL (Bookmark) 6-15
- Videos 12-10
- View Timer Settings 8-15

Edit Still Images 12-9
- Brightness 12-17
- Change Size 12-17
- Character Stamp 12-9
- Correct Backlight 12-18
- Frame 12-9
- Marker Stamp 12-9
- Refresh Skin Tone 12-18
- Retouch 12-17
- Rotate 12-17
- Trim away 12-10

Edit Videos 12-10
Emission OFF Mode 4-6
Emotion/Keyword 14-16
Emotion-Expressing Mail 5-6
Enter URL 6-3, 6-6
- Delete Records 6-13

External Display Indicators 1-8

F

FeliCa Mark 1-2
- IC Card Authentication 4-5
- IC Card Illumination 14-28
- Osaifu-Keitai® 11-2

Flash Sound Effect 14-19
Font 14-4
Font Size (Internet) 14-19
Font Size (Mail) 14-17
Font Size (S! Info Channel) 14-26
Forward (Message) 5-21
Forward Ring Tone 14-30
Forwarding Image (Phone Book) 14-12
Frame 7-11, 12-9

Index

G

- Global Roaming 3-13
  - Call Japan and Other Countries 3-13
  - Call within the Same Country 3-13
  - Settings 14-15
- Graphic Mail
  - Cancel Effects 5-17
  - Create 5-4
  - Create Automatically 5-17
  - Create from a Template 5-17
  - Delete Templates 5-17
  - Edit a Template 5-17
  - Save Template 5-17
- Group Calling 3-19
- Group Setting (Phone Book) 14-12
  - Ring Tone/Image 2-23

H

- Handset Parts 1-2
- Handsfree 3-17
- Hands-free Switch (Video Call) .. 14-14
- Header/Signature 14-16, 14-17
- Headset Mic. Setting 14-11
- Headset SW to Dial 14-11
- Headset Usage Setting 14-10
- Holidays 11-10
- Hyper Clear Voice 3-17

I

- IC Card Authentication 4-5
  - Activate 4-5
  - Register 4-5
- IC Card Illumination 14-28
- Icon Always Show (Camera) 14-23
- Icon Always Show (TV) 14-21
- Icons Setting 14-7
- Illumination 14-8
- Illumination in talk 14-13
- Image
  - Capture 7-6
  - Edit 12-9
- Image Display Mode 14-5
- Incoming Call Image 14-9
- Incoming Message Image 14-9
- Indicator Display Settings 14-7
- Info Notice Setting 14-10
- Infrared 13-2
  - Authentication Password 13-3
  - Receive All 13-4
  - Receive One File 13-3
  - Send All Ir Data 13-3
  - Send One File 13-3
- Infrared Port 1-2
- Initial Setup 1-18
- Initialize 14-30
- Initialized Browser 14-19
- Input Mode 14-27
- Insertion & Removal
  - Battery 1-14
  - Memory Card 12-12
  - USIM Card 1-13
- Interface Settings 14-29
- Internal Antenna 1-2
- International Calls 3-3
  - Enter “ + ” 3-16
- Internet 6-2
  - Access History 6-3, 6-6
  - Connect 6-3, 6-5
  - Enter URL 6-3, 6-6
  - Home 6-12
  - Page Operations 6-7
  - Quick Search 6-14
  - Reload 6-13
  - Send URL by Mail 6-13
  - Settings 14-19
- Interval/Number 14-23
- Int’l Dial Assistance 14-13

J

- JAN Code 11-21

K

- Key Backlight 14-28
- Key Illumination 1-22
  - Settings 14-28
- Keypad Lock 4-4
  - Setting 4-4

  Unlock Temporarily ... 4-4
Keypad Sound ... 14-10

L

Language（言語選択） ... 14-5
Life History Viewer ... 11-7
  Display setting ... 11-27
  Reload ... 11-27
Lock
  Dial Lock ... 4-3
  IC Card Lock ... 11-3
  Keypad Lock ... 4-4
  Original Lock ... 4-3
  Remote Lock ... 11-4
  Secure Remote Lock ... 4-5

M

Mail ... 5-2
  Add Folder ... 5-20
  Auto-sort ... 5-11
  Delete ... 5-19
  Delete All Reports ... 5-19
  Delete Attached Files ... 5-20
  Delete Folder ... 5-20
  Delete Read ... 5-19
  Draft ... 5-21
  Edit ... 5-21
  Filter ... 5-22
  Folder Lock ... 5-12
  Forward ... 5-21
  Mail Box Lock ... 5-12
  Mail Windows ... 5-10
  Message Storage Locations ... 5-9
  Move ... 5-19
  Number of Messages ... 5-20
  Protect ... 5-19
  Search Mail ... 5-22
  Secret Folders ... 5-12
  Settings ... 14-16
  Sort ... 5-22
  Sort Folder ... 5-20
  Tomomato-Mail ... 5-11
Mail List Disp. ... 14-17
Mail Ring Time ... 14-8
Mail Setting ... 14-16
Main Menu ... 2-2
  Change Theme ... 2-27
Manner Mode ... 1-20
  Manner Mode Set ... 14-9
  Manner Release Time ... 14-9
  Manner Start Time ... 14-9
  Original ... 14-9
Manufacture Number ... 14-19
Map Setting ... 14-29
Map URL Settings ... 14-29
Marker Stamp ... 12-9
Melody Playback
  Playlist ... 12-7
  Set Repeat Play ... 12-17
Memory Card ... 12-12
  Access Data ... 12-13
  Access Files ... 12-3
  Check & Repair ... 12-19
  Check Available Memory Space ... 12-19
  Copy Data from Handset ... 12-14
  Copy Data to Handset ... 12-14
  Delete Data ... 12-19
  DPOF setting ... 12-15
  Folders & Files ... 15-38
  Format ... 12-13
  Insert & Remove ... 12-12
  Transfer WMA Data ... 9-4
Memory Space (Memory info)
  Bookmarks ... 6-15
  Camera ... 7-14
  Data Folder ... 12-18
  Memory Card ... 12-19
  Messages ... 5-20
  Music ... 9-11
  Number of Saved Pages ... 6-16
  Phone Book ... 2-31
  S! Appli ... 9-12
  Schedules ... 11-27
  Server Mail Memory ... 5-18
Menu Display Set ... 14-6
Menu List ... 15-19
Message Download ... 14-17
Missed Calls ... 3-10
Mobile Widget ... 1-9, 10-2
  Change Position of widgets ... 10-8
  Delete from Desktop Page ... 10-8

  Downloading Contents 10-2
  Paste Contents 10-3
  Place widgets in Foreground or Background 10-8
  Settings 14-25
  Toggle Page 10-2
  Update Display 10-8
  Use 10-2
Modem 13-10
Move
  Bookmarks 6-15
  Files 12-11
  Messages 5-19
Multitask 2-9
  Activate Another Function 2-9
  Combinations 15-2
  Toggle Functions 2-10
Music Player (Video Player) 9-2
  Playback Windows 9-3
  Settings 14-24
My Phone Number 1-22

N

Net Access 14-24
Network Information 1-18
Network Password 1-21
Network Status 1-22
Noise Reduction 14-13
Notify Caller ID 3-16
Number of Entries
  Bookmarks 6-15
  Events 11-27
  Phone Book Entries 2-31
  Saved Messages 5-20
NW Search Mode 14-15

O

One Seg Digital TV 8-2
Open Inbox Messages 5-6
Open New Messages 5-6
Open-close Sound 14-10
Optional Services 3-14
Original Animation 12-6
Original Lock 4-3
  Customize 4-4
  Settings 4-3
Original Manner Mode 14-9
Original Menu 2-3, 14-7
Osaifu-Keitai® 11-2
  Activate Lifestyle-Appli 11-3
  Download Lifestyle-Appli 11-2
  Restrict Use 11-3
  Settings 14-28
  Use 11-3
Own Dictionary 2-15
  Delete 2-29
  Edit 2-29

P

Panoramic Shooting 7-11
Pause Dial 3-17, 14-12
PC Connection 13-9
  Access Memory Card Data 13-9
  Packet Transmission 13-10
  USB Mode Setting 13-9
PC Site Browser 6-5
  Change Disp. Mode 6-12
  Windows 6-5
Pedometer 11-19
  Activate 11-19
  Paced Steps（きっちり歩数） 11-19
  Reset 11-29
  Set 11-19
  View Data 11-20
  Walking Target 11-29
Phone Book
  Access Entries from Other Functions 2-22
  Attach Location Information to Image 2-31
  Change Entry Number 2-30
  Change Index Tab 2-30
  Check Number of Entries 2-31
  Copy 2-31
  Copy to USIM Card 2-24
  Create Entries 2-20
  Create Entries from Other Functions 2-20
  Delete Entries 2-31
  Delete Items 2-32
  Dial 2-21

  - Edit an Entry 2-31
  - Group Setting 14-12
  - Read Map 2-31
  - Restrictions 2-23
  - Ring Tone/Image 2-23
  - S! Addressbook Back-up 2-25
  - Save from Scanned Data 11-30
  - Search 2-21
  - Send Location Information 2-31
  - Set Incoming Image 2-20
  - Set Preferred Search Method 14-12
  - Set Secret 2-24
- **PIN Lock & Cancellation 1-12**
- **PIN1/PIN2 .... 1-12**
  - Change PIN1/PIN2 4-2
  - PIN1 Code Entry Set 4-2
- **Place Calls on Hold 3-16**
- **Play**
  - Answering Machine 3-5
  - Music 9-5
  - Playlist 9-6
  - Recorded Program 8-9
  - Voice Announce 14-10
  - Voice Mail 3-15
  - Voice Memo 3-5
- **Playlist (Songs) 9-6**
  - Add Music 9-11
  - Cancel Playlist Songs 9-11
  - Create 9-6
  - Delete 9-12
  - Play 9-6
  - Sort Playlist 9-11
- **PLMN Setting 14-15**
- **Power On/Off 1-18**
- **Prefix Numbers 3-16**
- **Prefix Setting 14-12**
- **Privacy Angle 14-5**
- **Program Guide 8-8**

Q

- **QR Code 11-21**
- **Quality Alarm 14-13**
- **Quick Album 12-5**
- **Quick Info Setting 14-5**
- **Quick Search 5-22, 6-14, 11-28**
- **Quick Silent 14-9**

R

- **Read Out Message 5-18**
- **Read Out Setting 14-17**
- **Receive & Open Messages 5-6**
  - Manually Retrieve Messages 5-18
  - Open Inbox Messages 5-6
  - Open New Messages 5-6
  - Read Out Message 5-18
  - Reply 5-7
  - Retrieve Complete S! Mail 5-18
  - Save Attachments 5-13
  - Use Mail List 5-7
- **Received Calls 3-10**
- **Receiving Setting 14-17**
- **Reconnect Signal 14-13**
- **Record at Low Battery 14-22**
- **Record Sound**
  - Sound without Video (Voice Mode) 7-12
  - Voice Announce 14-10
  - Voice Memo 3-4, 11-15
- **Record Timer 8-11**
- **Record Videos 7-8**
  - Auto Timer 7-11
  - Chance Capture 7-12
  - Speed Movie 7-12
  - Voice Mode 7-12
- **Redial 3-10**
- **Register S! Quick News Contents 10-4**
- **Reject Calls w/o Caller ID 4-6**
- **Reject Unknown 4-6**
- **Remote Control Numbers 14-21**
- **Reply to Messages 5-7**
- **Reset**
  - Blog/Mail Member List Name 5-16
  - Channel Settings 14-22
  - Confirmation Window (Data Broadcasts) 14-22
  - Desktop Icons 2-27
  - Folder Name (Common Phrases) 2-29
  - Handset 14-30
  - Holidays 11-27
  - Mail Settings 14-17

- Memory Card 12-13
- My Phone Number 1-22
- Original Menu 14-7
- PC Site Browser Settings 14-19
- Pedometer Measurements 11-29
- S! Appli Settings 14-24
- S! Quick News Contents 14-25
- SMS Center Selection 14-18
- Total Call Cost 3-18
- Total Call Time 3-18
- TV Settings 14-22
- Yahoo! Keitai Settings 14-19

Reset (Mail) **14-17**

Reset (S! Appli) **14-24**

Reset (Yahoo! Keitai) **14-19**

Reset Channel Setting **14-22**

Reset PC Site Brw. Set **14-19**

Reset Settings **14-30**

Reset Storage Area (TV) **14-22**

Reset Total Cost **3-18**

Reset Total Duration **3-18**

Reset TV Settings **14-22**

Retrieve New **5-18**

Ring Volume **14-8**

S

S! Addressbook Back-up **2-25**
- Auto Synchronize 14-12
- Check Settings 14-12
- Check Synchronize Log 2-26
- Delete Synchronize Log 2-32
- Synchronization Type 2-25
- Use 2-25

S! Appli **9-8**
- Activate 9-8
- Delete 9-12
- Download 9-8
- Settings 14-24

S! GPS Navi **11-5**
- Add to Phonebook 11-26
- Attach to Image 11-26
- Current Location 11-5
- Location Logs 11-26
- Navi Appli 11-5
- Paste to Mail 11-26
- Settings 14-29

S! Info Channel **10-5**
- Check Latest Information 10-5
- Get Latest Contents 10-8
- Save File 10-8
- Settings 14-26
- Subscribe for Service 10-5
- Weather Indicators 10-5

S! Information Notif. **14-26**

S! Quick News **10-4**
- Check Updated Information 10-4
- Delete Registered News 10-8
- Manually Update 10-8
- Register News 10-4
- Settings 14-25

Save
- Blog/Mail Member List 5-4
- Bluetooth® 13-6
- Bookmarks 6-10
- Events 11-9
- Holidays 11-10
- Own Dictionary 2-15
- Phone Book Entries 2-20
- S! Quick News 10-4
- Saved Pages 6-10
- Tasks 11-12
- Templates 2-15
- Text Memos 11-14
- Tomo-Den 3-12
- TV Links 8-14

Saved Pages **6-10**
- Delete 6-16
- Number of Pages 6-16
- Open 6-10
- Protect 6-16
- Save 6-10

Schedule (Events) **11-9**
- Add Holidays 11-10
- Check 11-10
- Copy 11-27
- Delete 11-11, 11-27
- Edit 11-27
- Icon Display 11-27
- Number of Schedules 11-27
- Reset Holiday 11-27
- Save 11-9
- Save a Text Memo to Schedule 11-28

  - Windows 11-9
- Screen Effect 14-5
- Script Settings 14-19
- Scroll (Internet) 14-19
- Scroll (Mail) 14-17
- Search
  - Messages in a Folder 5-22
  - Phone Book 2-21
  - Songs 9-11
- Secret Data
  - Phone Book Entries 2-24
  - Schedule 11-27
- Secret Data Only Mode 4-7
- Secret Folders 4-7
- Secret Mode 4-7
- Secure Remote Lock 4-5
- Security Code 1-21
- Select Image (Video Call) 14-14
- Select Microphone 14-11
- Select Network 14-15
- Send Location Info 14-29
- Send Messages 5-3
  - Check Delivery 5-16
- Send Referer 14-19
- Server Mail 5-7
  - Delete 5-18
  - Forward 5-18
  - Mail List 5-7, 5-18
- Set Hold Tone 14-13
- Set Image Disp. (S! Quick News) 14-25
- Set Image Disp. (Video Player) 14-24
- Set Main Time 14-2
- Set Max Cost Limit 14-14
- Set Mute Seconds 4-6
- Set Ringtone 14-8
  - From Data Folder 12-16
- Set Sub Clock 14-2
- Setting when folded 14-13
- Shoot Framed Images 7-11
- Shooting
  - Auto Timer 7-11
  - Blog Upload 7-14
  - Chance Capture 7-12
  - Continuous Shooting 7-10
  - Frame 7-11
  - Panoramic Shooting 7-11
  - Smile Mode 7-10
  - Speed Movie 7-12
  - Still Images 7-6
  - Videos 7-8
- Shortcut-key Setting 14-27
- Shutter Sound 14-23
- Side Key Guard 1-23
- Simple Menu 2-27
- Smile Level 14-23
- Smile Mode 7-10
- SMS
  - Receive 5-6
  - Send 5-5
  - SMS Center Selection 14-18
  - SMS Settings 14-16
- Software Update 15-4
- Songs
  - BGM playback 9-10
  - Bluetooth® 13-7
  - Download 9-4
  - Effect 9-10
  - Equalizer 9-10
  - Memory Info 9-11
  - Play 9-5
  - Playlist 9-6
  - Play Streaming 6-8
  - Repeat Setting 9-10
  - Resume Play 9-10
  - Search 9-11
  - Set as Ringtone 9-11
  - Sort 9-11
  - Transfer From PC 9-4
- Sort (Change Order)
  - Booked Programs 8-16
  - Desktop Icons 2-27
  - Files 12-16
  - Folders (Bookmark) 6-15
  - Folders (Mail) 5-20
  - Messages 5-22
  - Original Menu Items 14-7
  - Playlist Songs 9-11
  - Songs 9-11

  - Tasks 11-28
- Sound/Vib Settings 14-24
- Specifications 15-35
- Speed Movie 7-12
- Standby Disp. Set. (Mobile Widget) 14-25
- Standby Setting (Weather Indicators) 14-26
- Standby Settings (S! Quick News) 14-25
- Start Attachment (auto) 14-17
- Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable .... x, 1-23
- Storage Location (Camera) 14-23
- Streaming 6-8
- Style Mode Settings 14-3
- Sub-address Setting 14-12
- Subtitles 14-21

T

- T9 Change Mode 14-27
- T9 Input Mode 2-16
- Templates (Common Phrases)
  - Delete 2-29
  - Edit 2-15, 2-29
  - Insert 2-14
- Text Entry 2-11
  - 2-touch Mode 2-16
  - 5-touch Mode 2-12
  - Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana 2-14
  - Character Entry Modes 2-12
  - Common Phrases (Templates) 2-14
  - Copy 2-14
  - Correction 2-14
  - Cut 2-14
  - Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜) 2-14
  - Deletion 2-14
  - Emoticons 2-14
  - Key Assignments 15-9
  - Kuten Code List 15-12
  - Kuten Codes 2-28
  - Line Feed 2-28
  - Lower Case 2-14
  - Lower Case & Upper Case 2-27
  - Overwrite & Insert Modes 2-28
  - Paste 2-14
  - Pictographs 2-14
  - Quote Data 2-28
  - Settings 14-27
  - Single-byte & Double-byte 2-28
  - Space 2-28
  - Split Windows 2-12
  - Symbols 2-14
  - T9 Input Mode 2-16
  - Text Entry Window 2-11
  - Text Input Methods 2-12
  - Use Dictionary 2-28
  - Word Prediction 2-12
- Text Memo 11-14
  - Check Information 11-28
  - Delete 11-14, 11-28
  - Save 11-14
  - Save from Scanned Data 11-30
  - Sort 11-28
- Text Reader 11-23
  - Check Scanned Text 11-24
  - Delete Scanned Data 11-30
  - Edit Scanned Text 11-29
  - NEGA/POSI Mode 11-29
  - Scan 11-24
  - Scan Modes 11-23
  - Text Scanning Window 11-23
- Time Shift Playback 8-7
  - Time Shift Setup 14-22
- Time-out to Search 14-29
- To Do List (Tasks) 11-12
  - Change Order 11-28
  - Check 11-12
  - Delete 11-13, 11-28
  - Save 11-12
  - Set Status 11-28
- Tomo-Den 3-12
  - Cancel Entries 3-18
  - Dial 3-12
  - Save Entries 3-12
  - Send Messages 3-12
- Tomomato-Mail 5-11
- Trim away (Still Image) 12-10
- Troubleshooting 15-6
- TV 8-2

- Brightness 8-13
- Channel Settings 8-3
- Data Broadcasts 8-7
- Main/Sub Sound 8-13
- Program Guide 8-8
- Program Info 8-13
- Record 8-9
- Record Timer 8-11
- Settings 14-21
- Sound Switch 8-13
- Time Shift Playback 8-7
- View Timer 8-11
- Watch 8-6
- Windows 8-4

TV Effect 14-21

TV Link
- Delete 8-14
- Number of TV Links 8-14
- Save 8-14
- Show Details 8-14

TV Power Saving 14-21

TV Sound While Closed 14-21

U

Update
- Data Broadcast 8-13
- Life History Viewer 11-27
- S! Quick News List 10-8
- Server Mail List 5-7, 5-18
- Web Page 6-13

USB Mode Setting 13-9

USIM Card 1-11
- Copy Phone Book Entries 2-24, 2-31
- Copy SMS Messages 5-20
- Delete Phone Book Entries 2-32
- Delete SMS Messages 5-20
- Insertion & Removal 1-13
- PINs 1-12

V

Vibrator 14-8

Video Call 3-7
- Brightness 3-17
- Color Mode Set 3-17
- Display Light 3-17
- Hyper Clear Voice 3-17
- Settings 14-14
- Visual Prefer. 3-17
- White Balance 3-17
- Windows 3-7

Videos
- Playlist 12-7
- Streaming 6-8

View Timer 8-11

Viewer Settings 14-5

Voice Announce 14-10

Voice Call 3-3
- Hyper Clear Voice 3-17
- Send Touch Tones 3-17

Voice Mail 3-14
- Missed Call Notification 3-15
- Play Messages 3-15

Voice Memo 3-4, 11-15
- Auto Voice Memo 14-13
- Play/Delete Messages 3-5, 3-18
- Record the Other Party's Voice 3-4
- Record Your Voice 11-15

W

Wallpaper (Stand-by Display) 14-3
- Image in Data Folder 12-16
- Recorded Video 7-15
- Shot Still Image 7-15
- Video in Data Folder 12-16

Warning Messages 14-20

Warranty 15-52

Weather Indicators 10-5
- Indicator List 15-18
- Manual Update 10-9
- Settings 14-26
- Subscribe for Service 10-5

Weather Notif. 14-26

Weather Update 14-26

Word Prediction 2-12, 14-27

Write/Del User Data 14-24

Y

Yahoo! Keitai 6-3
- Switch to PC 6-12

Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with 930N.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure or malfunction of this product.

After Sales Service

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (P. 15-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 15-53), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

Note

- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files). SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-53).

Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information.
For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

SoftBank 930N User Guide

July 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information,
please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 930N
Manufacturer: NEC Corporation